

117. JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES, the TRINITY and THE WATCHTOWER

Table of Contents

	Page No
1. What attracts people to join the Watchtower	825
2. Three Basic Assumptions Which Form the JW World View	825
3. How to Handle a JW Witnessing Encounter	826
4. Watchtower Attributes of God	826
5. Watchtower Organisation	826
1) Isaiah 43:10..... Witnesses of Jehovah?	826
2) Matthew 24:45-47.... Is the Watchtower God's Faithful and Discreet Slave?	827
3) Acts 8:30,31..... Do we need the Watchtower to explain the Bible?.....	827
4) II Peter 1:20,21.....No private interpretation	828
5) I Corinthians 1:10.... Watchtower (WT) enforced unity of thought.....	828
6) Impressions of the Watchtower.....	829
6. Eight Issues JW's Argue Against	833
7. Jehovah's Name or Jesus Christ's Name? (Heb. 1:10; 1 Peter 3:15; Acts 2:21)	834
8. Watchtower's Wrong Beliefs	838
9. Deity of Christ Verses that New World Translation Changes	840
1) Colossians 1:17..... 'other'	840
2) Philippians 2:9..... 'other'	841
3) Zechariah 12:10..... 'look on me'	842
4) Acts 20:28..... 'his own blood'	843
5) Hebrews 1:8; Psalm 45:6... 'Thy throne, O God'	844
6) Hebrews 1:6..... 'worship him' to 'do obeisance'	846
7) Titus 2:13..... 'Great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ'	847
8) II Peter 1:1..... 'God and our Saviour Jesus Christ'	850
9) John 1:1..... 'the Word was God'	850
10) John 8:58..... 'Before Abraham was, I am'	856
10. Is Christ Inferior to the Father?	858
1) I Corinthians 11:3..... 'The head of Christ is God'	858
2) Revelation 3:14..... 'beginning of the creation of God'	859
3) Proverbs 8:22,23..... 'I was set up from everlasting'	860
4) Colossians 1:15..... 'firstborn (prototokos) of every creature'	860
5) John 3:16..... 'He gave His only begotten Son'	862
6) I Corinthians 15:28... 'then shall the Son be subject to Him'	863
7) I Corinthians 8:6..... 'one God, the Father and one Lord JC'	864
8) John 20:17..... 'My God and Your God'	864
9) John 14:28..... 'Father is greater than Jesus'	865
10) Mark 13:32..... 'of that day and hour . . . '	866
11) Isaiah 9:6..... is Jesus 'a mighty God' or 'Jehovah God'?	867
12) John 17:3..... 'Know thee the only true God'	868
13) Psalm 110:1..... 'The Lord (JHWH) said to my Lord (Adonai)'	869
14) John 4:23..... 'true worshippers shall worship the Father'	871
15) Mark 10:17, 18..... 'there is none good but one, that is God'	872
16) Hebrews 9:27..... 'to die once <u>for all time</u> '	872
11. The Trinity	873
1) Refuting the Watchtower's false quotes of early Church Writers.....	873
2) Is the Trinity a Pagan Concept? No	877
3) Refuting I Corinthians 14:33 'God is not the author of confusion'	878
4) Refuting WT's misunderstanding of John 17:3	878

5) Refuting WT's misunderstanding of Deuteronomy. 6:4 and Mark 12:29: 'The Lord (YHWH) our God (Elohim) is one Lord (YHWH).....	878
6) Notice how God reveals Himself in stages to man.....	879
12. Bible Proofs of the Trinity	880
1) Matthew 28:19 'The Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit'	880
2) Genesis 18,19..... Three men each called Jehovah.....	881
3) II Corinthians 3:17..... 'Jehovah is the Spirit'	881
4) I John 5:7,8 in heaven, the Father, the Word and the Holy Ghost, & these three are 'one' ...	881
5) Each have 119 identical Divine attributes	896
6) II Corinthians 13:14Benediction	881
7) 30 Bible Proofs of the Trinity.....	882
13. Proof that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God	884
I Explicit statements that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God:	884
1) Isaiah 9:6..... 'the Mighty God'	884
2) Isaiah 44:6..... 'Jehovah the King of Israel, and his redeemer Jehovah of hosts	884
3) Isaiah 48:12,16..... 'the Lord God and his Spirit hath sent me'	885
4) Zechariah 2:8-11 ... 'thus saith Jehovah of hosts...Jehovah hath sent me'	885
5) Zechariah 3:2..... 'Jehovah said to Satan, Jehovah rebuke thee'	885
6) John 1:1..... 'the word was God'	850, 885
7) John 1:3 and Malachi 2:10 ... 'hath not one God created us?'	886
8) John 3:13..... 'the Son of man which is in heaven'.....	886
9) John 4:42..... Christ and the Father are the Only Saviour.....	886
10) John 5:18..... 'making himself equal with God'	887
11) John 5:23..... 'all men should honour the Son even as they honour the Father'	887
12) John 6:46..... 'Not any man hath seen the Father'	887
13) John 8:24..... 'If ye believe not that I am, ye shall die in your sins'	887
14) John 8:58..... 'Before Abraham was I am'	887
15) John 10:30..... 'I and the Father are One'	888
16) John 10:33..... 'thou being a man makest thyself God'	888
17) John 17:5..... Christ and the Father share the same glory.....	889
18) John 20:28..... 'My Lord and My God'	890
19) Acts 20:28..... 'God . . with His own blood'	843, 890
20) Romans 10:9 ... 'declare that Jesus is Lord (Hebrew: <i>Ha Adon</i> =the True God)'	890
21) I Corinthians 15:47..... 'the Lord from heaven'	891
22) I Timothy 3:16..... 'God was manifest in the flesh'	804, 892
23) Titus 2:13..... 'great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ'	847, 893
24) Hebrews 1:6..... 'Let all the angels of God worship him'	846, 893
25) Hebrews 1:8..... 'To the Son he saith Thy throne O God'	844, 893
26) Hebrews 1:10..... 'Thou Lord in the beginning hast laid'	893
27) II Peter 1:1..... 'God and our Saviour Jesus Christ'	849, 894
28) Revelation 1:8; 22:13..... 'The Alpha and Omega'	894
29) Psalm 103:19 and Matthew 11:25 Both are called 'Lord'	895
30) Both own the same throne, servants, face, name, priests, temple and light	895
31) Colossians 2:9 ... 'In him dwells all the fullness of the Godhead bodily'	895
32) Micah 5:2 'goings forth have been from of old (<i>qedmah</i>), from everlasting (<i>olam</i>)... ..	895
33) I John 5:20..... 'Jesus Christ. This is the true God.'	895
34) Malachi 3:1..... 'the Lord (Hebrew: <i>Ha Adon</i>) shall suddenly come to His temple'	895
II Both the Father and Son have the same 119 Attributes, Claims and Majesty	896
III Appearance of Jehovah the Son to 9 Old Testament Saints who Worshipped Him	899
IV New Testament Examples of Prayer to Christ:(John 5:40, Acts 7:59, I Cor. 1:2, Phil. 2:11)	899
V Father and Son have the same Divine Offices	901

14. Christ's Bodily Resurrection	902
1) Luke 24:37,39 'seen a spirit..I myself: handle me..a spirit has not <u>flesh</u> and <u>bones</u> .'	902
2) John 20:27 'thrust it into my <u>side</u> '	902
3) Acts 2:30,31 'neither did his <u>flesh</u> see corruption.'	902
4) John 2:19-21 'in 3 days I will raise it up...he spake of the temple of his <u>body</u> .'	902
5) Luke 22:18 'I will not <u>drink</u> of the fruit of the vine until the Kingdom of God come'	903
6) Luke 24:41,42Resurrected Christ <u>ate</u> a broiled fish and an honeycomb.....	903
7) Romans 8:11.....As Christ's body was raised, so will ours.....	903
8) John 20:22 'He <u>breathed</u> on them, and said...'	903
9) Zechariah 14:4.... 'His <u>feet</u> shall stand in that day upon the Mount of Olives'	903
10) Zechariah 13:6.... 'What are these wounds in thine <u>hands</u> ?'	903
11) Revelation 1:17 .. 'resurrected Christ <u>touched</u> John'	903
15. Is Salvation by Christ or by Watchtower Works?	904
1) John 3:3,5,7 'ye must be born again	904
2) Present tense salvation. Matthew 24:13.....	906
3) Romans 10:13 'Paul equates calling on Jehovah with calling on Christ for salvation'	906
4) I Timothy 2:5 'no mediator for the great crowd'	907
16. WT False Prophecies	908
Q1: Do you agree that Deuteronomy 18:21-22 teaches that a true prophet of God gives prophecies coming true 100% of the time, and false prophets give prophecies failing to happen?	
Q2: Has the WT ever claimed to be God's Prophet?	
Q3: Can we agree that the WT prophet has given prophecies about events & dates in the future?	
Q4: Applying Moses' & Jesus' test for prophets to WT, did any WT prophecies fail to come true?	
17. 16 Contradictions and False Doctrines of the Watchtower	915
18. Four Tests for the Watchtower	919
18. The 144,000 Anointed Class and 'Other Sheep'	919
1) Luke 12:32..... 'The Little Flock' as the 144,000 'Anointed Class'	920
2) Revelation 7:4..... Are the 144,000 in the Anointed Class?	921
3) John 10:16The 'Other Sheep'	922
4) Revelation 7:9.....The 'Great Crowd' as the 'Other Sheep'	923
19. Watchtower and Bible Sufficiency	924
20. Birthdays	924
21. Is Jesus Michael the Archangel?	925
22. Witnessing to a JW	926
23. Blood Transfusions	927
24. The Cross	928
25. Holy Spirit: Is He a Person or an Active Force?	929
26. Counselling those who leave the Watchtower	931
27. War and Self-Defence	932
28. Watchtower Brainwashing and Thought Control	932
29. The Divine Name.....	934
30. Sequence of Verses to Discuss and Questions to Ask.....	936
31. The Trinity in Nature	940
32. Questions to Ask to Refute JW Objections.....	941
33. Places where KIT gives the Correct Reading, contradicting NWT Readings.....	943
34. Verses showing that believers go to <u>heaven</u> immediately after death.....	35,36
35. Verses showing that unbelievers go to a literal, conscious <u>hell</u> after death.....	39
36. Soul Sleep error.....	655
37. The Physical, bodily return of Christ to earth.....	238
38. God has not cast away His people Israel.....	482
39. Good works don't save us.....	541
40. What JW's will NOT tell you at the door.....	948

JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES and THE WATCHTOWER ORGANISATION

Introduction:

The Jehovah's Witnesses group was started in the 1870's by Charles Taze Russell, who drew ideas from Seventh Day Adventism and Christadelphianism. *The Watchtower* magazine was first published in 1879. Through door-to-door proselytising and authoritarian leadership, they have grown to about 3.9 million members by 1991.

From 1970 a million JW's resigned or were disfellowshipped.

The Watchtower Society's Headquarters are at 25 Columbia Heights, Brooklyn, New York.

It is ruled by a group of 12 men headed by a president who rules for life with absolute power.

These presidents have been: Charles Russell (1874-1916)

Joseph Rutherford (1916-1942)

Nathan Knorr (1942-1977)

Fred Franz (1977-1992)

Milton Henschel (1992-)

Fred Franz's nephew, Raymond Franz, has left the organisation. He wrote the book '*Crisis of Conscience*' exposing the group as having:

- 1) Antibiblical teachings
- 2) Given many false prophecies
- 3) Changed its teachings and policies
- 4) Lied and covered up information
- 5) Destroyed many of its members' lives.

1. WHAT ATTRACTS PEOPLE TO JOIN THE WATCHTOWER?

- Answer:
- 1) Many people look for answers to life's problems and for divine guidance.
 - 2) Many are frightened about the future.
 - 3) Many are tired of the lack of moral values in society.
 - 4) Many like the dedication and commitment of the JW people.
 - 5) Many in mainline churches have never been taught the Bible by their pastors, and they desire to know it better, so they agree to a JW Bible study, which soon gets switched to a Watchtower book study.

2. THREE ASSUMPTIONS FORM THE JW WORLD VIEW

- 1) Divine guidance comes only through the WT Society. This leads JW's to live under a dictatorial, authoritarian organisation that **suppresses independent thinking** in the name of God. Disagreement with the WT is seen as satanic and disagreeing with God.
- 2) JW's alone have the truth about God. JW's alone claim to be the people of God. They hence feel exclusive, unique and superior.
- 3) JW's are told that every other church in Christendom is false and controlled by Satan. JW's view Christians as a hated enemy.

JW's allow **human reason to judge the Word of God**. Any Bible teachings, such as the Trinity, hell or the personality of the Holy Spirit, which to them seem 'unreasonable', they think that it cannot be true. Just because man can't understand something, doesn't mean that thing is false. For example, scientists had long believed that light was either 'waves' or 'particles', yet now it has been proven to be **both** 'waves' and 'particles'. No scientist can explain this fact fully, but it is proven and must be accepted. So it is that the Bible teaches that Jesus Christ is **both 100% God and 100% man**. We may not understand it or think it reasonable, but we must believe the Scriptures that teach this without changing them.

3. HOW TO HANDLE A JW WITNESSING ENCOUNTER

- 1) **Encourage** him or her to **thoroughly examine their beliefs**. ‘People should examine all the evidence by examining **both sides** of a matter.’ (*Awake*, 22 October 1973, p.6). Say, ‘I would like to examine the Scriptures and test both religious beliefs by the Bible.’
- 2) Speak **kindly** and **respectfully** as Paul did to the Athenians.
- 3) Deal thoroughly with **one or two issues each meeting**. Make another appointment for later. Instead of jumping from verse to verse, slow them down to discuss each passage thoroughly.
- 4) **Ask questions** to help him discover problems in Watchtower theology for himself, in an unemotional, non-threatening way.
- 5) Undermine WT authority by **showing their false prophecies**, and how they changed their position on key doctrines.

4. WATCHTOWER ATTRIBUTES OF GOD

- 1) The WT god is **not omnipresent**. ‘The Watchtower god is **not omnipresent**, for he is spoken of as having a location. His throne in heaven.’ (*Aid to Bible Understanding*, p 665)
- 2) The WT god is **not omniscient**. JWs feel that for God to possess any attribute which they cannot understand is ‘illogical’, so they deny Him to be omniscient. They say that God does not know all things past, present and future (*Watchtower*, 15 July 84, p 4,5)
- 3) WT rejects the **Trinity** because it is **incomprehensible**. If the JW discards his limited view of God’s nature, the Bible can be taken at face value.

5. THE WATCHTOWER ORGANISATION

JWs believe that God set up the Watchtower Society as His visible representative on earth. JWs are constantly reminded that people are utterly unable to know the true meaning of Scripture without the Society and its vast literature.

JWs are expected to obey the WT as the voice of God. (*Watchtower*, 15 June 57, p 370).

The WT says, ‘We must recognize not only Jehovah God as our Father, but **his organisation as our Mother**.’ (*Watchtower*, 1 May 57, p 274).

JWs are not to think for themselves to interpret the Bible. They are to submit their minds to the Watchtower (WT). If a JW disobeys WT instructions, they assume that he is ‘apostate’, and the punishment is ‘disfellowshipping’, whereby his WT friends are forbidden to talk to him. This **fear of disfellowshipping** is one of the WT’s most effective means of keeping members obedient to its teachings.

Some of the verses that the Watchtower twists to **ensnare people into its organisation** are:

1. Isaiah 43:10 - ‘Witnesses’ of Jehovah?

‘Ye are my witnesses, saith Jehovah, and my servant whom I have chosen.’

JWs take this verse to mean that they alone are the only group chosen by God on the earth.

The Correct Bible teaching: Isaiah 43:10 refers only to **Israel** as witnesses of Jehovah.

They were to declare Jehovah as the only true God to pagan nations in the Law Dispensation from 1500 BC to 33 AD.

‘Ye’ refers to Jews, not Christians today. To apply it to JWs today is twisting Scripture.

Ask: If JWs are the only true witness for God, and JWs only started in the 1870’s, does this mean that God was **without a witness in the world for 1800 years**? If so, then God didn’t care for people to have His truth for 1800 years. Notice that in the New Testament, believers are **witnesses to Jesus Christ** who is Jehovah. For example:

- a) ‘Ye shall be **witnesses** unto **me**.’ (Acts 1:8). The disciples became **Christ’s** (not Jehovah’s) witnesses. They were witnesses of Christ’s bodily, physical, literal **resurrection**, which is a part of the Gospel (I Corinthians 15:1-4). Belief in Christ’s bodily resurrection is a condition of salvation (Romans 10:9), which JWs deny.
- b) ‘This Jesus hath God **raised up**, whereof **we all are witnesses**.’ (Acts 2:32).
- c) ‘Whom God hath **raised** from the dead; whereof **we are witnesses**.’ (Acts 3:15).
- d) ‘And with great power gave the apostles **witness of the resurrection** of the Lord Jesus.’ (Acts 4:33).
- e) ‘But God **raised him** from the dead: And he was seen many days of them which came up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are **his witnesses** unto the people.’ Acts 13:30,31.

Ask: According to these verses, were the early Christians witnesses of Jehovah or witnesses of Jesus Christ?

2. Matthew 24:45-47 - Is the Watchtower ‘God’s Faithful and Discreet Slave’?

Question: Who is this slave/servant?

Answer:

- i) The WT book ‘*The Harp of God*’, 1921, p.239 states: ‘Without a doubt **Pastor Russell** filled the office.....and was therefore that wise and faithful servant.’
- ii) WT (15 February, 1981, p.19) says it is the **WT organisation**: ‘We cannot find the Scriptural guidance we need outside the “faithful and discreet slave” **organisation**.’
Ask: How do you explain the WT Society’s change of opinion from this slave being Pastor Russell to the WT organisation? They claim that the ‘evil slave’ in v. 48-51 is apostate Christendom.
- iii) The **correct Bible teaching:** Jesus compares his disciples to servants who have been put in charge of their Master’s household. Each servant could fulfil his task faithfully or unfaithfully. Faithful servants will be rewarded, and unfaithful servants will be punished at the Lord’s return. This passage refers not to any organisation, but individuals who profess to follow Christ, particularly pastors (I Peter 5:2).

Note: If JWs read **Matthew 25:19-23** and think about it, they would see that Jesus mentions **MORE THAN ONE** faithful and discreet slave (‘the Lord of those **servants** cometh’ v.19). Any faithful Christian shepherd is represented by these faithful slaves.

Ask: Since the WT organisation only started in 1874, did God have no true representatives on earth for 1800 years? **Did God not care for his people to understand the Bible for 1800 years?** Matthew 28:20 teaches, ‘Lo, I am with you **always** even to the **end of the age**.’ This teaches that there would **always be followers of Jesus** on earth up to the **end of the age**. This proves the Watchtower wrong in claiming to be the faithful and discreet slave.

3. Acts 8:30, 31 - Do we need the Watchtower to explain the Bible?

Watchtower teaching: ‘Understandest thou what thou readest? And he said, “How can I except some man guide me?”’ (Acts 8:30,31).

The *Watchtower* Magazine, 1 December 1981, p 27, elevates the WT organisation above the Bible. It makes gaining eternal life depend on following the WT Society.

‘Unless we are in touch with the (WT).....we will not progress along the road to life, no matter how much Bible reading we do.’ (p.27).

JWs blindly follow the WT Society wherever it leads. They say that mankind needs the WT Organisation in order to understand Scripture, just as the Ethiopian needed Philip to explain Isaiah 53.

The Correct Bible Teaching: God gives Bible teachers (Ephesians 4:11) and the Holy Spirit to illuminate, but

- 1) there is no Bible support for an infallible organisation whose infallible views must be accepted by everybody;
- 2) Philip preached directly from Scripture, not from any Watchtower literature;
- 3) The Ethiopian did not have to join and submit to an organisation;
- 4) He rejoiced in Christ when his teacher left, without any sense of loss.
- 5) He had no written New Testament to instruct him like we have today.
- 6) No Watchtower organisation literature followed him.

Ask:

- 1) Where in the Bible does it say that people must join and submit to the interpretations of the WT hierarchical organisation?
- 2) Did Philip use WT literature or did he use Scripture alone?
- 3) If Scripture alone was sufficient for Philip and the Ethiopian, isn't Scripture alone sufficient for us?

4. II Peter 1:20, 21 - No 'Private Interpretation'.

'No prophecy of the Scripture is of any private interpretation.' (v.20).

'Private' means 'one's own'. 'Interpretation' means 'unloosing'.

No Scripture is of 'one's own unloosing' from the context. Peter is not forbidding private study and interpretation. Roman Catholics, JW's and Mormons teach that only the 'spiritual leaders' may interpret Scripture, and they use this verse in their defence. Since all Scripture is inspired by the Holy Spirit, it must all 'hang together' and no one Scripture should be divorced from the others. An individual cannot of 'one's own' choosing 'unloose' one verse from other verses on the same subject. You can use the Bible to prove almost anything if you unloose or divorce verses from their proper context, which is exactly the approach used by false teachers. No Scripture will contradict another. The only way heretical teachers can prove their heretical doctrines is by 'unloosing' verses from their proper context.

Hence **Peter's message in v.20 is that no Scripture is of 'one's own unloosing' from the near and far context.** That is, no verse will contradict any other verse.

Ask:

- 1) Were the Bereans right to test Paul's teachings by Scripture? (Yes) (Acts 17:11).
- 2) Are you willing to test WT teachings in the light of Scripture alone, not disagreeing with other Scriptures?
- 3) If you find WT teachings that go against what Scripture says, what will you do?

5. I Corinthians 1:10 Is the Watchtower right because of its enforced unity of thought?

'I beseech you.....that ye all speak the same thing, and that there be no divisions among you; but that ye be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment.' v.10.

The WT applies this verse in two ways:

- a) They impose the one set of doctrines on JW's, to give a forced agreement and unity, or JW's will be disfellowshipped.
- b) They use this verse to prove that JW's are the only true Christians because they are completely united in mind and judgment. They boast that they are of 'one heart and soul' worldwide, which is not true of Christendom's denominations.

The Correct Bible Teaching: It is a myth to think that a group's absolute unity is proof that they are the only true Christians, and that those who do not have unity are unbelievers. Paul wrote I Corinthians 1:10 because the Corinthians were already disunited on 16 issues.

Ask: Does the divisiveness among the Corinthians mean that they were not Christians? (Paul believed they were Christians in I Corinthians 1:2 'Sanctified in Christ Jesus').

I Corinthians 1:10 does **not** teach that we are to attain unity by submitting to an organisation.

Paul said that we must prove or test all things, and not unquestioningly accept what certain teachers say (I Thess. 5:21), as JW's accept WT theology for fear of being disfellowshipped. This is like Nazi Germany saying that everyone must believe and obey the 'organisation' or be disfellowshipped from the world (ie. killed). **People are held in the WT organisation by the bondage of fear of being disfellowshipped from God's kingdom.**

Ask: Where in I Corinthians 1:10 does it refer to an **organisation** or say that unity comes by **submitting to an organisation**? Paul in Romans 14:2-5 allowed difference of opinion, as long as unity was maintained. 'One man esteemeth one day above another: another esteemeth every day alike. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind.'

Ask: Doesn't Romans 14:5 teach that it is all right for Christians to differ on some religious issues? Hence, Paul was not saying in I Corinthians 1:10 to do away with all diversity, but to remove their unbrotherly, divisive attitude.

The Watchtower commands JW's to:

- i) Not accept or read religious literature of people they meet. (*Watchtower*, 1 May 1984, p31).
- ii) Not listen to criticisms of the WT organisation (*Watchtower*, 15 May 1984, p17).
- iii) Not speak words 'expressing criticism of the way the appointed elders are handling matters.' (*Watchtower*, 15 January 1984, p 16).
- iv) 'avoid independent thinking' and to 'fight against independent thinking'. (*Watchtower*, 15 January 1983, p22, 27).

The Bible teaches that we are not to be united by lockstep conformity but by **love**: 'put on **charity** which is the **bond**....' (Colossians 3:14)

Note: The WT clearly violates a Bible command in Romans 14:5, 6 on the matter of holy days, or holidays (eg. Christmas, Easter, etc). '**He that regardeth the day, regardeth it unto the Lord**'. This verse allows individual Christians the right to observe special days which other Christians may choose not to observe. Yet the JW who observes Christmas, Easter, Mothers Day, etc. is immediately tried and disfellowshipped, being cut off from his friends and family.

6. Impressions of the Watchtower Organisation by Ted Dencher.

1. JW's ask people for a Bible study once a week at whatever time is suitable.
2. Baptized JW's are considered to be ordained ministers.
3. JW's frown on any effort or ambition to make something of yourself. You must sell yourself completely to the organisation.
4. How do people become JW's?
 - a) Their big attraction is a universal Armageddon, coming any day now, when all except JW's will be destroyed (annihilated).
 - b) People with little Bible knowledge, believe everything the WT says. Why? You accept the 'faithful and wise servant' of Matthew 24:45, 46 as the 'servant of Isaiah 43:10. You are told this 'servant' is the Watchtower Society.

Once you accept this, then you will accept anything they tell you, because of the authority you are led to believe they have over you.

5. JWs teach that all governments are of the devil. This is wrong from Romans 13:1,4 ‘The powers that be are ordained of God...He is the minister of God to thee for good’.
6. JWs deride all other religions for thinking that they are going to heaven. (II Cor 5:1-8)
7. JWs refer to all organised religion as the Babylon whore.
8. JWs allow no individual study outside what the WT permits him to have. He could make no conclusions that the Watchtower has not already arrived at. All private thought is discouraged, and the member soon becomes an automaton.
9. JWs accept the WT organisation as their saviour, because they are taught that the WT organisation will be spared through Armageddon, and you MUST be a part of it to escape destruction.
10. JWs love to misapply Isaiah 1:18 ‘Come now, and let us reason together, saith the Lord.’ This lets them apply human reason to all their conclusions. (See Isaiah 55:7-9)
11. Few people seem able to counteract ‘JW logic’. This makes it seem all the more true.
12. They say that clergy titles are unbiblical, so they call themselves ‘servants’(John 15:15)
13. People become JWs because they are impressed with their organisation.
14. Most JWs think nothing of the Lord Jesus Christ. To JWs Christ is only a subordinate to God, and a member of the ‘theocratic organisation.’
15. The WT Society uses JWs to carry out its worldwide literature campaign.
16. The WT organisation is structured as follows:

President Worldwide
Watchtower Society Directors
Zone Servant
Branch Servant
District Servant
Circuit Servant
(in charge of 20 congregations)
Special Pioneer
(visits 150 hours a month. He is paid a salary)
Pioneer
(visits 100 hours a month)
Kingdom Publisher
(whom you meet at your door)

Each Kingdom Hall has seven overseers and 2 to 20 area study conductors. With all these eyes on you, it is difficult to maintain individuality, so you just give up.

17. **Anything** coming from the WT Society is taken as truth, regardless of what it is. **Everything** from any other source is falsehood, regardless of what it is. ‘WT truth’ changes from time to time.
18. C T Russell was a **Non-Christian sceptic** when he began the WT. He searched the Scriptures from a sceptic’s viewpoint. Russell perjured himself in court and proved himself a fraud, claiming he knew Greek when he could not read the Greek alphabet.

His formal education ended at age 14. The JW claims to be a scholarly student of the Bible. At best he is a devout student of Watchtower publications.

19. Ted Dencher (ex-JW) said: ‘I knew I was a sinner. I knew that all these works had not removed a single sin. I was the same sinner as I had always been. I placed all hopes on the organisation. Very rarely were we challenged at the door by people who said that Christ has removed our sins by His shed blood, or we would die in our sins. Our works are unable to remove our sins. You cannot escape the convictions of your own heart.’
20. If a JW leaves and goes to another faith, his JW friends and relatives turn against him in anger, and spread all sorts of stories about him.
21. Most JWs either stay up to 10 years and leave, or stay for life.
22. The WT is very much opposed to the historic Christian faith with its stress on the individual and his relationship to God. In its place they substitute the WT organisation.
23. They oppose churches paying their preachers. They hence ignore I Cor 9:4, 7, 13, 14.
24. When the WT Society changes a doctrine they **trick their people** by saying that they are constantly trying to improve themselves. Thinking for yourself is outlawed. JWs must always overrule their own thoughts and convictions and give way to the Society’s.
25. **Key:** Before you can convince a JW that he is wrong, you must first convince him that the Watchtower Society is wrong. He makes every effort to stay in the organisation because he has been led to believe that all those outside it will be doomed to annihilation at Armageddon..
26. They oppose saluting the flag, thinking that the saluter declares that his salvation comes from the nation saluted. This is false because, ‘**Salute** all them that have the rule over you, and all the saints.’ (Hebrews 13:24). ‘Then Toi sent Joram his son unto King David, to **salute** him, and to bless him’. (II Samuel 8:10).
27. JWs believe that there is no salvation outside their organisation (just like the Roman Catholic Church does). They have always criticised the Roman Catholic Church, yet they have copied its organisation pattern.
28. They do not believe that salvation can be obtained in this present life. You must spend all your life working for it. Nor do they believe that salvation can be obtained by Christ’s death, burial and resurrection. They believe that **knowledge** and **works** (not salvation) lead to **life**. They believe Christ gave an opportunity for life to worthy ones. To them salvation is not for unworthy sinners(Abram saved Gen.15:6;Rahab saved Jos2:11-p546)
29. **Ambition** is destroyed. JWs have become deadened to the world they live in. They do not care what happens. He thus becomes a most useless person. He is not allowed to do anything useful for anyone except JWs. He must not vote, nor aid in civil defence, nor sign a petition against liquor or gambling, nor give money to any cause outside the WT. A spouse will often walk off from a mate if the mate does not become a JW.
30. **Christmas** and **Easter** are not recognised or celebrated. Why? Because Christ means nothing to them, hence they see no reason for recognising His birth or His death. (The angels, shepherds and wise men celebrated Christ’s birth in Luke 2:8-20). Jesus Christ is precious to those who believe (I Peter 2:7). JWs would not know the difference if Christ had never come. They could get along just as well without Him. They are still slaves to working for their salvation.
31. **Only the 144,000 ‘spiritual Israelites’ go to heaven.** The rest are the earthly class.

32. **No hell for the wicked.** JWs believe the wicked will be annihilated. (Ezek.32:21,30,31)
33. JWs are not trained to answer the Christ-centred testimony of one who has been born again. They are trained to argue about denominations, but are NOT trained to argue successfully against the Gospel of Christ.
34. JWs purpose is to get people out of churches where they are individuals, and into the WT organisation where they will be automatons.
To a JW, to be yourself is 'worldliness' and 'false religion'.
35. The organisation:
- replaces the need for Christ's blood to gain favour with God, in favour of itself.
 - stands in the place of Jesus Christ as Mediator between God and man.
 - has become the saviour instead of Christ, who to them is just a fellow creature.
 - makes the WT authority greater than the Bible, as seen in how they change verses to suit their doctrines.
 - has pontifical authority. Disputers are cast out as heretics.
36. What is the effect of this on a JW's mind?
- He no longer thinks of himself as a God-fearing individual but WT fearing.
 - All piety and reverence have been removed from belief.
 - All faith in the individual Christ has gone. It now becomes a matter of conducting business.
 - It no longer involves worship. It has degenerated to a system of works and rewards.
 - WT runs like a business. Statistics are kept on everything. They mock everything but the organisation.
 - They do works to prove themselves faithful and to earn everlasting life. They believe it was the life of Christ, not His death, that really mattered. They think it was Christ's obedient life, not His blood that saves.
37. A person changes thoroughly to become a JW in 6-12 months. How?
- Initial house-to-house visiting.** The purpose is to get literature into the person's hands so they can read it in their homes and to arouse interest.
 - Return visits.** The purpose is to improve interest and to start a home Bible study.
 - Home 'Bible' Studies** for 1 hour. They then attend the theocratic ministry school (speech class) to give short talks before an audience.
 - Training new ministers door-to-door.** 'The secret of success is to start training these new ones from the very earliest. Take them with you as soon as possible. It is the backbone of our ministry'.
 - Baptism** by immersion, not in the name of Father, Son and Holy Spirit, but in nobody's name at all. This makes him a minister and an official JW. It means, 'You give up your old life and begin a new life, dedicated (sins and all) to serve Jehovah.'
- Average conversion takes place in 6-12 months because of persistent follow-up.
38. You must know your Bible and know it well. Challenge them on the Deity of Christ and stick to it as the most important doctrine. Be firm, polite and loving. Hatred will beget hatred.
39. The WT Organisation places much emphasis on class distinctions, eg 'the 144,000 anointed heavenly class', the 'great crowd earthly class', and the 'Queen of Sheba class' of men of good will. This is a fantasy of the governing body of JWs.

6. EIGHT ISSUES JW's ARGUE AGAINST

JWs say that clergy should call themselves '**servants**' instead of using flattering titles. JWs forget John 15:15 'Henceforth I call you **not servants**; for the servant knoweth not what his lord doeth: but I have called you **friends**.'

The close relationship between Christ and the Christian does not exist for the JW, so he sees himself as a slave of the WT organisation. A Christian should give a logical, clear testimony of what Christ has done for him. The main issues JW's argue against are as follows:

- Arguing against the **Trinity**. This involves the deity of Christ, and the Holy Spirit's deity and personality.
- Arguing against **Hell**. They reason hell to be unbiblical, unreasonable, unloving and unjust.
- Arguing against the **soul**. They believe the soul is a living physical body. They quote Ezekiel 18:4 'The soul that sinneth, it shall die'. This refers to physical death of a person, not spiritual death, as seen from Ezekiel 18:27 'When the wicked man turns away from his wickedness...he shall **save his soul alive**.' Body, soul, spirit (I Thes 5:23)
- Arguing against **Christ's ransom**. To JWs, Christ is only a man who gave them a chance to work out their own salvation. They believe Christ **only** atoned for Adam's disobedience, though not for Adam himself. JWs do **not** believe that Christ atoned for our personal sins, but only for our disobedience in Adam.
- Arguing against **Christ's visible return**. JWs believe that Christ returned invisibly in 1914, thus marking the end of the times of the Gentiles. Then how is it that Jerusalem is still trodden down of the Gentiles? (Luke 21:24), 'Every eye shall see Him' (Rev 1:7).
- Arguing against **judgment after death**. JWs believe that the coming judgment will be the millennium. They are not aware of the four judgments of:
 - Christ judged on the cross for our sins; (I Peter 2:24; 3:18).
 - The judgment seat of Christ in heaven for believers' rewards; (II Cor.5:10).
 - The sheep and goat nations judgment early in the millennium;(Matthew 25:31-46).
 - The Great White Throne judgment of unbelievers raised after the 1000 years. (Rev.20:11-15).

They think that 'those who meet with God's favourable judgment **will be** granted everlasting life.' (*Let God be True*, p 292). They believe that they will be judged favourably because of works they performed in this life.
- Arguing against **regeneration** and the **Holy Spirit**. They degrade the Holy Spirit to an 'active force' and they put the Watchtower organisation in his place. 'His theocratic organisation.....to help us understand that Word' (*Let God be True*, p 306).. Their salvation is never sure, so they keep selling books to earn salvation by good works.
- Arguing against all **piety**. JWs do not worship God. There is no reverence or awe of God in their hearts. It is forbidden to worship Jesus Christ because to them He is created. In their hymn book '*Songs to Jehovah's Praise*', they extol the works of the organisation and of individual JWs. No adoring words to God or Christ, just praise to the organisation. JWs will never kneel to pray, nor have any prayer meetings. They will never hold public debates because they realise that no JW can stand up against anyone who knows the Bible really well.

7. Jehovah's Name or Jesus Christ's Name.

The Watchtower teaches that God's true Name is Jehovah. They teach that:

'Sometime during the second or third Century CE, the scribes removed the tetragrammaton (JHWH) from both the Septuagint and the Christian Greek Scriptures and replaced it with κυριος (Lord) or θεος (God)'. *Reference Edition of NWT, 1984, p 1564.*

The Watchtower's Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT) proves that Jesus is Jehovah God. On page 10,11 of the 1985 KIT, under the heading 'Restoring the Divine Name, Jehovah' we read: 'the evidence (*what evidence?*) is that the original text of the Christian Greek Scriptures has been tampered with (*no proof*) . . . Sometime during the second or third centuries CE, the Tetragrammaton (YHWH) was eliminated from the Greek texts by copyists (no proof). Instead of YHWH they substituted the words *Kurios* ('Lord') and *Theos* ('God').'

Note: This is a lie. There is no historical or manuscript evidence or evidence of protest to support this claim. Somebody would have protested such a change.No one did. It never happened.

The New World Translation (NWT) is the JW perversion of the Bible made to support their false doctrines. It inserts the name 'Jehovah' in the New Testament in the place of God (θεος =theos) or Lord (κυριος =kurios) on 237 occasions, where they believe it refers to God the Father. They often refer to Hebrew translations of the NT to see where this has been done. These are footnoted as J¹ to J²⁷. Their dishonesty and deceit is shown by their failure to translate these words as 'Jehovah' when it refers to Christ. (eg: Philippians 2:11; Hebrews 1:10).

JWs say that the proper use of God's 'correct' name (Jehovah) is absolutely **essential to one's salvation**. They quote from their NWT:

'Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will be saved.' Romans 10:13 (NWT).

'People will have to know that I am Jehovah.' Ezekiel 39:6 (NWT).

JWs believe that because they are the only group who refer to God by His 'true' name, Jehovah, they are the **only true followers of God**.

Their claim is false for these reasons:

- 1) **Jehovah is not a Biblical term.** It is a man-made term. The Old Testament has YHWH because the original Hebrew only had consonants. Jews feared taking God's name in vain, so when they publicly read YHWH, they would pronounce it 'Adonai' (Lord). Later they inserted the vowels from Adonai (a-o-a) into the consonants YHWH to give YAHOWAH, which became Jehovah. Hence, the word Jehovah comes from a consonant-vowel combination from YHWH and Adonai.
- 2) **No-one knows for sure the original correct pronunciation of YHWH.** Hence we cannot insist on 'Jehovah' as being correct.
- 3) **Jesus never addressed the Father as Jehovah** in the New Testament. If JWs are correct that God must be always called Jehovah, then Jesus was sinning by not calling God 'Jehovah'. When the NWT puts Jehovah in Jesus' mouth in the NT, it contradicts all the NT manuscripts which don't have it.

Ask: Since Jesus never in the NT addressed the Father as Jehovah, why should we?

- 4) **Jesus and the Apostle Paul tell us to address God as 'Father':**

a) **Jesus taught us to pray** to God as 'Our Father', not 'Our Jehovah':

'After this manner therefore pray ye: Our **Father**.....' (Matthew 6:9).

b) **Jesus addressed God as Father** in His own prayers:

'I thank thee, O **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth'. (Matthew 11:25).

'O my **Father**, if it be possible.....' (Matthew 26:39,42).

'He said, Abba, **Father**.....' (Mark 14:36).

'I thank thee, O **Father**, Lord of heaven.....' (Luke 10:21).

'Saying, **Father**, if thou be willing.....' (Luke 22:42).

'Then said Jesus, **Father**, forgive them;.....' (Luke 23:34).

'**Father**, the hour is come.....' (John 17:1).

c) **Paul** said, 'we cry, Abba, **Father**.' (Romans 8:15).

d) The **Holy Spirit** through Paul said, 'God hath sent forth the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, **Father**'. (Galatians 4:6).

Here the Holy Spirit of God tells us to call God 'Abba, Father', not 'Jehovah'

Ask: If **Jesus**, the **Holy Spirit** and **Paul** all address God as Father nine times (and never as Jehovah) then shouldn't we call God 'Father'?

- 5) **No Ancient NT manuscripts contain the tetragram (YHWH) to translate as Jehovah.**

The Church writers before 325 AD only mention Jehovah once in passing. JWs tell us that most Bible versions deceive people because they omit Jehovah as God's Name, so the JWs dishonestly add the word 'Jehovah' to the NT text, even though it is not in any NT Greek manuscript, ancient version, papyri or lectionary.

The WT's claim that 'Jehovah' as God's name was removed from the NT by superstitious scribes, is a total lie with no supporting historical or manuscript evidence.

- 6) **Whose Name did the early Christians identify themselves with? Was it Jehovah or was it Jesus Christ? Always Jesus Christ, never Jehovah.**

Who knows more, the Apostles or modern JWs? Consider these examples:

a) The Apostles **never** used the name 'Jehovah'.

b) The Apostles and first century Christians **were never called 'Jehovah's Witnesses'**. 'The disciples were called **Christians** first in Antioch.' (Acts 11:26).

c) There is **no proof** that **Jesus** or his **disciples ever pronounced** the tetragram YHWH. JWs claim that when Jesus read from Isaiah 61:1 'The Spirit of the Lord is upon me....' as quoted in Luke 4:18,19, that Jesus pronounced the word 'YHWH'.

This is most unlikely. JWs assume that the religious leaders endorsing Christ's 'gracious words' in verse 22 was because He uttered the name YHWH?

Historical records in the **Mishnah**, from **Josephus**, and from other sources show the Jews were **loathe** to allow the name YHWH to be used. The Jews would not have tolerated it being used by anybody but the High Priest.Jesus would have read 'Adonai'

- 7) **119 Bible passages referring to Jehovah, are quoted and applied to Christ in the New Testament (see Chapter 97).**

Ask: In view of 119 Bible verses applying 'Jehovah' to Christ in the NT, what does this tell you about who Christ is?

- 8) **The New Testament tells us to name the name of Jesus Christ, not the name of Jehovah.** Consider these examples:

1. 'Let **every one** that nameth the **name of Christ** depart from iniquity.' (II Timothy 2:19)

2. 'I beseech you, brethren, by the **name** of our **Lord Jesus Christ** . . .' (I Cor 1:10)

3. 'Ye are washed,....sanctified,... justified in the **name** of the **Lord Jesus**' (I Cor 6:11)

4. 'Whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do **all** in the **name** of the **Lord Jesus**.' (Col 3:17)

5. 'That the **name** of our **Lord Jesus Christ** may be **glorified** in you....' (II Thess 1:12)

6. 'Now **we command you**, brethren, in the **name** of our **Lord Jesus Christ**, that ye withdraw yourselves.....' (II Thess. 3:6)

7. 'all that in every place **call** upon the **name** of **Jesus Christ** our Lord, both theirs and ours.' (I Corinthians 1:2)
8. 'Thou holdest fast **my name**....' Jesus said to the Pergamos church. (Revelation 2:13). JW's have **not held fast Christ's name**, nor have they called upon Christ's name, nor do they name the name of Christ, nor is Jesus Christ precious to them, because they do not have saving belief in Him. 'Unto you . . . which believe He is precious'. (I Peter 2:7).

Ask: Where does the NT tell us to name the name of Jehovah?

- 9) **The New Testament always lifts up Jesus Christ's name, not Jehovah's name.** Why? Because Jesus Christ is Jehovah God on earth. Christ is 100% God and 100% man.

- Q1:** In whose name should **we meet together**?
'Where two or three are gathered together in **my name**, there am I in the midst of them.' (Matthew 18:20)
- Q2:** **Demons** were cast out by the authority of whose name?
'Paul.....said to the spirit, I command thee in the **name of Jesus Christ** to come out of her.' (Acts 16:18)
- Q3:** In whose name should we **preach repentance** and **forgiveness of sins**?
'And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in **his name** among all nations. And **ye** are **witnesses** of these things.' (Luke 24:47,48)
- Q4:** In whose name are we to **believe** and receive forgiveness of sins?
'....through **his name** whosoever **believeth** in him shall receive remission of sins.' (Acts 10:43, John 1:12)
- Q5:** By whose name, and **no other**, do we obtain **salvation**? Acts 4:10,12 says:
'by the **name of Jesus Christ** ... Neither is there salvation in any other, for there is **none other name** under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.'
- Q6:** In whose name should we **pray**? John 16:23,24; 14:13,14; 15:16 says:
'Whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in **my name**, he will give it you.'
- Q7:** In whose name is the **Holy Spirit sent**?
'But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send **in my name**.....' (John 14:26)
- Q8:** In whose name and authority did the disciples **heal the sick**?
'**His name** through faith **in his name** hath made this man strong' (Acts 3:16; 4:30)
- Q9:** Whose name did Paul say that we are to **call** upon?
'all that in every place **call** upon the **name of Jesus Christ** our Lord.' (I Cor 1:2)
- Q10:** Whose name is **above every name**?
'God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a **name** which is **above every name** that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is **Lord**.' (Phil 2:9-11)
Paul's quote about Christ is from Isaiah 45:22-24 where every knee will bow to Jehovah. What is true about Jehovah, is also true of Christ, the Lord of all mankind
- Q11:** According to Acts 1:8, of whom are we to be **witnesses**?
'Ye shall be **witnesses** unto **me** (Jesus)'
- Q12:** In whose name were believers **baptized**?
'they were baptized in the **name of the Lord Jesus**.' (Acts 8:16; 2:38)
- Q13:** In whose name were **believers designated**?
'the disciples were called **Christians** first in Antioch'. (Acts 11:26)
- Q14:** In whose name did the **apostles speak**?
'Commanded them not to **speak** at all nor **teach** in the **name of Jesus**' Acts 4:17,18

Q15: In whose name did early Christians **suffer**? Acts 15:26 says:
'Men that have **hazarded** their lives for the **name of our Lord Jesus Christ**.'
'rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer **shame** for his **name**' Acts 5:41;9:16

Q16: Whose name was **Paul to carry**?
'Lord said: He is a chosen vessel unto me, to **bear my name** before the Gentiles, kings, and the children of Israel.' (Acts 9:15)

Q17: In whose name did Paul **deliver a man to Satan**?
'In the **name of our Lord Jesus Christ**...to deliver such an one to Satan.' I Cor 5:4,5

Q18: In whose name did the **apostles teach**? Acts 5:28; 8:12 says:
'Did we not straitly command you that ye should not teach **in this name**?'

- 10) **Why does WT break their own rule** (where the OT speaks of Jehovah), **that they do not insert Jehovah in the NT, when the quote clearly refers to Christ?**

Answer: They do not want Christ to be God, due to their theological bias. Consider three examples:

1) Psalm 102:24,25 (NWT)	Hebrews 1:10 (NWT)
'O my God . . . long ago you laid the foundations of the earth . . .'	'with reference to the Son : . . . You at the beginning, O Lord laid the foundations of the earth itself . . .' (v 10)

The Psalm unquestionably speaks of Jehovah God laying the foundations of the earth. The writer of Hebrews applies it to Christ as Jehovah God laying the foundations of the earth. Yet, if JW's translate 'Lord' in the NT as 'Jehovah' elsewhere, why don't they translate 'Lord' in Hebrews 1:10 as 'Jehovah'?

Answer: Because Hebrews 1:10 refers to the Son, and **this would make Christ to be Jehovah**, which they refuse to accept. The NWT is biased against the Trinity.

2) Isaiah 8:13 (NWT)	I Peter 3:15 (NWT)
' Jehovah of armies - he is the One whom you should treat as holy . . .'	'But sanctify the Christ as Lord in your hearts . . .'

Peter paraphrases Isaiah 8:13 and **applies it directly to Christ**, saying that we are to **sanctify Christ as Lord (Jehovah)** in our hearts. The NWT committee has shown **bias** in not following their own rules, by **refusing to insert 'Jehovah'** into I Peter 3:15.

The WT *Kingdom Interlinear*, p 11 of the Foreword (1985 Edition) states their rule: 'How is a modern translator to know when to render the Greek words 'κυριος' or 'θεος' as 'Jehovah'? By determining where the inspired Christian writers (NT) have **quoted from the Hebrew scriptures** (OT). Then he must refer back to the original (Hebrew OT) to locate whether 'Jehovah' appears there.'

Even the *Kingdom Interlinear* footnote (p.1016) shows that **8 modern Hebrew Bibles** have '**Jehovah God**' in I Peter 3:15 reading as 'sanctify the Christ as **Jehovah God** in your hearts'.

The NWT committee could not be consistent with their rule.

3) Joel 2:32 (NWT)	Acts 2:21, 38 (NWT)
'Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will get away safe;	'Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah (v.21) 'Peter said, Repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ .' (v.38)

Peter quotes from Joel 2:32 (spoken of Jehovah) and applies it to Jesus in Acts 2:21 and 38. Calling on the **name of Jehovah** for salvation equals repenting and being baptised in the **name of Jesus Christ** because of the forgiveness of sins.

Conclusion: Jesus shares the **nature** of His Father and His **Name**. The absence of YHWH in any NT manuscript demolishes the WT case of introducing the word ‘Jehovah’ into the NT.

Question: If God was so concerned about preserving His covenant name, why did the **apostles** not preserve it in their writings?

Question: To imply that the name ‘Jehovah’ is the main name of God that we are to use, contradicts the continued NT use of the name ‘**Jesus**’ on **900 occasions**, while the **tetragram** YHWH is used **nowhere** in the NT.

Ask: Why does the WT not translate ‘Jehovah’ into Hebrews 1:10, I Peter 3:15 and Philippians 2:11, when the OT passages from which these are quoted refer to YHWH? We are to make the name of the Father known as Jesus emphasized (Matthew 6:9; John 17:26). How do we do it? By recognizing that **Jesus Christ was chosen by the Father to embody all the glory and important reputation of that Name.**

8. WATCHTOWER’S WRONG BELIEFS.

Wrong Belief of the Watchtower:	Refuted by Scripture:
Christ is God’s Son and is inferior to Him	John 5:23 ‘honour the Son, as .the Father’.
Christ was the first of God’s creation	Micah 5:2 ‘goings forth ...from everlasting’.
Christ died on a stake, not a cross	John 20:25 ‘the print of the nails’.
Christ’s human life was paid as a ransom for obedient humans	Hebrews 2:9 ‘That He by the grace of God should taste death for every man ’
Christ was raised from the dead as an immortal spirit person	Luke 24:39 ‘see ...a spirit has not flesh and bones, as ye see me have’.
Christ’s presence (Second Coming) is in spirit	Zech.12:4 ‘His feet shall stand in that day on the mount of Olives’.
Earth will never be destroyed or depopulated	Rev. 21:1 ‘I saw a new earth : the first heaven and the first earth were passed away.. ’
Wicked will be eternally destroyed	Rev.14:11 ‘they have no rest day or night ’
The human soul ceases to exist at death	Rev.6:9,10 ‘ souls of them that were slain ... cried with a loud voice , saying, How long.’
Hell is mankind’s common grave	Ezekiel 32:21 ‘The strong...shall speak to him out of the midst of hell ’.
Only a little flock of 144,000 go to heaven and rule with Christ	Zechariah 14:5 ‘The Lord my God shall come and all the saints with thee’. (Rev19:1)
Taking blood into body through veins violates God’s laws	Leviticus 3:17 ‘You must not eat any fat or any blood at all’.
The Holy Spirit is not God	II Cor. 3:17 ‘Now Jehovah is the Spirit’(NWT)

JWs come to your door for two main reasons:

1. They believe that you will be destroyed in the imminent Battle of Armageddon unless you ‘come to Jehovah’s organisation for salvation’. (WT 15.Nov. 81, p.21)
2. They believe that they will not survive Armageddon unless they engage in this door-to-door preaching work under the direction of the Watchtower Organisation.

‘They have a **zeal** of God, but **not according to knowledge**.....they being **ignorant of God’s righteousness**, and going about to establish their own righteousness, **have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God.**’ (Romans 10:2,3).

Most JWs are victims of victims, and blind followers of blind leaders. Most have been non-practising Roman Catholics or Protestants who never got saved.

JWs invited them to study the Bible, but soon switched them to a Watchtower book study. Instead of leading the seeker to God, they led him to the WT organisation.

Notice 15 WT errors on the following issues:

1. Armageddon - all will be destroyed then except JWs.
2. Birthdays - no birthday cards or celebrations are allowed.
3. Blood Transfusions - must be refused even if death is likely.
4. True Christianity - vanished after the 12 apostles died. It was restored when Russell started the Watchtower Organisation in the 1870’s.
5. Christ Returned - invisibly in 1914, ruling as King on earth through the Watchtower Society. He found them doing the work of the ‘faithful and wise servant’ (Matthew 24:45). He appointed them ruler over all his belongings. All other churches and professed Christians are tools of the devil. Their New World Translation changes references to the second ‘coming’ to ‘presence’. The generation of people who witnessed Christ’s invisible return in 1914 will not pass away before Armageddon comes. (Matthew 24:34).
6. Cross - is despised by JWs as a pagan symbol. JWs think that Christ was nailed to a straight upright pole called a stake, without a crossbeam. This is refuted by Thomas in John 20:25 ‘Except I shall see in his hands the print of the **nails**.’ Two nails here proves a crossbar was used; one nail would mean a stake. Paul gloried in the Cross (Galatians 6:14).
7. Deity - The Father alone is God, and should be addressed as ‘Jehovah’. JWs think that Jesus Christ is not God, but Michael the Archangel in human form. (JWs think that the Holy Spirit is not God, nor a person, but an active force.) They add the word ‘Jehovah’ 237 times to the NWT New Testament with no manuscript support.
8. Disfellowshipping - is the punishment for breaking WT rules. No JWs are allowed to speak to him.
9. Heaven - Only 144,000 people (the ‘little flock’) go to heaven. This number was filled by 1935. The other JWs hope to live on the earth forever. Zech.14:5 ‘All the saints with thee.’
10. Holidays - JWs forbid celebration of Christmas, Easter, Good Friday, New Year’s Day, Mothers Day, Fathers Day. Romans 14:5,6 ‘He that regardeth the day, regardeth it to the Lord’.
11. Holy Spirit -JWs say the Holy Spirit is neither God nor a person, but an impersonal active force that God uses to do His will. Romans 8:27 ‘knoweth what is the **mind** of the Spirit.’
12. Jesus Christ - JWs say that Jesus Christ is the first-created angel, Michael.(No Bible support)
13. Watchtower Organisation - JWs believe it is the visible agency of the Kingdom of God on earth, ruling all aspects of a JW’s life.
14. Resurrection - JWs believe that when Christ died He became non-existent, and that He was raised three days later as a spirit, that is to say, an angel. They deny Christ’s bodily resurrection. JWs believe that at Christ’s ‘invisible return in 1914’ He then raised dead Christians to spirit life, and that the rest of the human dead will be raised **bodily** during the 1000 year reign of **God’s** Kingdom. (No Bible support, just a JW invention). Heb.13:8

15. Salvation - although giving lip service to salvation by faith in Christ, JW's believe that salvation only comes by full obedience to the WT Society, and by their zealous door-to-door works program. Those JW's who enter the 1000 year paradise must maintain their good works for 1000 years before they can be sealed for life. Eph.2:8,9 'Not of works'.

9. 'DEITY OF CHRIST' VERSES THAT THE NWT CHANGES.

Greek linguists, both Christian and non-Christian, universally reject the NWT as biased and inaccurate. Dr Julius Mantey, one of the world's leading Greek experts, publicly demanded that the Watchtower Society stop misquoting his Greek Grammar to support the NWT.

He says: 'I have never read any New Testament so badly translated as the Kingdom Interlinear Translation of the Greek Scriptures. It is a distortion of the NT.' (Vantage Press, 1980, p.136)

Our purpose is to show how the New World Translation mistranslates key verses which for the last 1900 years have been understood as Deity of Christ proof texts.

1. Colossians 1:17

Ask: Why does the NWT insert 'OTHER' four times, when it is not in any New Testament Greek manuscript?

Answer: Because they do not want it to appear that Christ is the Creator and that He existed before all things.

The NWT makes it appear that Jesus was created first, and then He was used by Jehovah to create all other things in the Universe. The JW Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT), p 880 shows that the Greek word 'panta' means 'all things' not 'all other things'. Here, by adding 'other' they change the meaning of the text from Christ being the Creator, to being a created being on a par with all other created things.

- 1) This is unacceptable because, while it is true that the Greek word **'δια'** is used of Christ's role as Creator (John 1:3, I Corinthians 8:6, Colossians 1:16, Hebrews 1:2), **'δια' is also used of God as Creator** in Romans 11:36 which states that the universe was created 'through' (Greek **'δια'**) **God**:
'For of him, and **through** him, and to him, are all things.'
Hebrews 2:10 also states that the universe was created 'through or by' (Greek **'δια'**) the **Father**: 'by (δι) whom are all things.'

'δια' (by/through) used of God/Father/Christ as CREATOR		
God	Romans 11:36	For of him, and 'δια' him, and to him, are all things.
Father	Hebrews 2:10	And 'δια' whom are all things
Christ	John 1:2,3	The same was in the beginning with God. And all things were made 'δια' him
	I Corinthians 8:6	One Lord Jesus Christ, 'δια' whom are all things.
	Colossians 1:15,16	Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature: For 'δια' him were all things created
	Hebrews 1:2	His Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, 'δια' whom also he made the worlds.

Ask: Since the Greek word **'δια'**, is used of **both the Father and the Son**, how can it be taken to indicate a lesser role for Christ?

- 2) Isaiah 44:24 states that **ONLY God is the Creator**:

'I am the LORD that maketh all things; that stretcheth forth the heavens **ALONE**, that spreadeth abroad the earth **by MYSELF**'.

Because **Jehovah** is the maker of all things 'alone', 'by myself', and that **Christ** is the maker of all things ('All things were made by him' (John 1:3), this proves that Christ is God Almighty.

- 3) All things were created FOR Christ (Colossians 1:16), means that Christ is the **end** for which all things exist. All things are to serve His will and contribute to His glory. ('All things were created **BY** him and **FOR** him'. Col. 1:16).
- 4) Christ as **sole Creator** is seen in John 1:3:
'All things were made by him; and without him was not anything made that was made' 'by whom also he made the worlds'. (Hebrews 1:2,10)
- 5) Christ is the **Preserver of the universe**.
He sustains it: 'by him all things consist (hold together).' (Colossians 1:17)
- 6) Christ 'is **before all things**.' (Colossians 1:17). Jesus Christ is the great **FIRST** cause.
- 7) Christ '**IS** before all things.' Were Christ merely pre-existent, we would say that Christ '**WAS** before all things'. The present tense '**IS**' indicates eternal, unending existence, just as does 'I AM' in John 8:24, 58.

2. Philippians 2:9

The NWT (1961 Edition) deceptively **adds the word 'other'** in Philippians 2:9 without parentheses or brackets, where 'other' appears in no New Testament manuscript. It has been deliberately added by the WT to change the meaning from Christ having the greatest name, to Christ having the second greatest name other than God. Realising their dishonesty, they bracket 'other' in the KIT and NWT 1984 edition as seen below:

JW Objection: The WT says that Christ played a **junior role in creation** since I Cor. 8:6 says that God made the world **by** or **through** (Greek **'δια'** ie: 'dia') Christ.

Answer:

gospel interprets Zechariah 12:10 as a prophecy of Christ's death on the cross (John 19:37). Jesus Christ is clearly described as 'pierced' in Revelation 1:7.

Ask: Since 'Me' identifies Jehovah as Jesus, whom will you believe: the Hebrew Text, the Septuagint and the early church writers all saying 'Me', or the NWT saying 'the One' with no manuscript support?

Ask: Why does the NWT go against the manuscripts here?

Ask: According to the manuscripts, who is Jesus in Zechariah 12:10? (Me/Jehovah).

Ask: Which do you believe regarding Philippians 2:9 - the WT organisation with no Greek manuscript support, or all the NT manuscripts?

3. **Zechariah 12:10** "...they shall look upon me (*Jehovah*) whom they have pierced,..." Jehovah is speaking in Zechariah 12:1-10 of Christ's return, Israel's conversion, and Israel looking on **Me** (Jehovah) whom they (Israel) have pierced. Jehovah is saying that Israel have pierced Me (*Jehovah*), yet we all know that Israel have pierced Jesus Christ. Based on the rule of logic that if a = b and b = c then a = c, we must accept that:

Jehovah = Me whom they pierced = Christ.

JWs, not willing to face the obvious fact that **Jesus is Jehovah**, have deliberately altered the text, and changed the Bible, from 'Me' to 'the One', with no manuscript support. Hence, in the NWT it is not Jehovah who was pierced but the One (Jesus) who was pierced. They break the connection between Jehovah and Jesus.

Question: What evidence is there for the reading 'Me'?

- i) The **Hebrew Masoretic Text** reads 'Me'.

- ii) The **Greek Septuagint** translation of the Old Testament reads 'Me'.

- iii) The **early Church writer Cyprian (200-258 AD)** quotes 'Me'.
(*The Treaties of Cyprian*, Vol.5, p.524)

Cyprian quoted from his Bible in 200 AD. Also, 'Me' is quoted in the Old Latin version, the Syriac Peshitta, the Aramaic Targums, as well as other early church writers. John's

4. **Acts 20:28** Why does the NWT add 'Son'?

NWT	Acts 20:28	KJV
To shepherd the congregation of God , which he purchased with the blood of his own [Son]	Feed the church of God , which he has purchased with his own blood .	

The NWT, by adding [Son], makes it appear that the church was purchased **NOT** by God's blood (which would make Jesus equal to God), but by the Son's blood.

Question 1: Who does 'his own blood' in the KJV refer to?

Answer: It can only be God, because **God** is the **antecedent** that the **pronoun 'his'** refers to. This is a universally accepted rule of English grammar.

Question 2: Why does the NWT **add the word 'Son'** in this verse when 'Son' is not found in any Greek manuscripts in the world? (Due to WT's bias against Christ's deity).

Answer: 'his own blood' found in the KJV teaches that Christ's blood is God's blood. This is a doctrine that proves that Jesus is God. JWs refuse to accept that Jesus is God, so they change this verse to agree with their view of Christ being less than God, by adding the word 'Son'. They thus **break the connection** between God equalling Christ.

Question 3: What evidence is there for the reading 'with his own blood' (KJV and all other translations)?

- i) All **Greek manuscripts, all ancient versions** and **all lectionaries** have '**his own blood**'. Notice that the Greek word for 'Son' (◆✠□☩) is not anywhere in the Greek text:

- ii) The **early church writer Tertullian** quotes it correctly in **200-250 AD**.
Volume 4, p.46

Ask: Why does the WT organisation add the word ‘Son’ into the verse, when not one Greek NT manuscript in the world contains ‘Son’?

Ask: Do you think it is acceptable to insert words into the Bible that are not found in any NT Greek manuscripts?

Jesus, who is called God, shed His own blood for the flock. Jesus was fully God and fully man. He was always one person. Christ the God-man shed His blood to pay for our sins.

In His **human** nature, Christ knew hunger (Luke 4:2), weariness (John 4:6) and sleepiness (Luke 8:23).

In His **divine** nature, Christ was omniscient (John 2:24), omnipresent (John 1:48) and omnipotent (John 11; Matthew 28:20).

5. Hebrews 1:8 and Psalm 45:6

KJV (Psalm 45:6)	KJV (Hebrews 1:8)
‘Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever...’	‘But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God is for ever and ever.....’

‘Thy throne, O God’ is changed by the JWs to ‘God is thy throne’.

The Watchtower alters these verses so that Jesus cannot be called ‘God’. They change it to appear that Jesus’ authority has its source in Jehovah God, by altering it to ‘God is your throne forever’. The KJV shows Jesus is God and the NWT diminishes Jesus to be less than God. Hebrews 1:8 is quoted from Psalm 45:6.

NWT (Psalm 45:6)	NWT (Hebrews 1:8)
‘ God is your throne to time indefinite, even forever...’	But with reference to the Son: ‘ God is your throne forever and ever...’

The NWT is wrong because:

i) **NWT reverses the word order in the Greek NT in Hebrews 1:8.**

ii) The **Septuagint**, which is the Greek translation of **Psalm 45:6** reads, ‘**Thy throne, O God....**’

iii) The **Hebrew of Psalm 45:6** has the **vocative of address ‘O God’**. ‘O God’ in the Hebrew means that God is being addressed.

iv) The **Watchtower interpretation is foreign to the context**.

The writer to the Hebrews quotes Psalm 45:6 and applies it to Christ, as God, being superior to the angels. If the purpose of Hebrews 1:8 in the NWT is just to show that Jesus derives His authority from Jehovah God, as the Watchtower says, then Jesus’ superiority is not demonstrated in the least. After all, the angels, Moses, the Apostles and every believer derive their authority from Jehovah God.

However, the message of Hebrews 1:8 (‘Thy throne, O God is for ever and ever’) is that **God’s throne is Christ’s throne** - they are one and the same.

That is, **all that is God’s is also Christ’s** as John 16:15 says:

‘All things that the Father hath are mine.’

This is true of God’s throne. Christ owns God’s throne as Revelation 22:1 says:

‘The throne of God **and** of the Lamb.’

Christ sits on the throne of God exercising the **same authority** as the Father.

Ask: Can you see that the NWT interpretation is foreign to the context?

v) The **early church writers quote ‘Thy throne, O God is forever’ from their Bibles from 110-250 AD.**

a) **Justin Martyr** (110-165 AD) in his dialogue with Trypho. Volume 1, p.224 and p.229.

b) **Tertullian** (145-220 AD) defends the doctrine of the Holy Trinity against Praxeas. Vol 3, p.607.

Tertullian believed, quoted and taught the Trinity as seen in Volume 3, p.606.

This is well before 325 AD that JWs say that the **Trinity** doctrine was introduced by Rome.

c) **Cyprian** (200-258 AD). Volume 5, p.518.

d) **Melito** (about 140-195 AD).
Volume 8, p.761.

vi) The NWT's 'God is your throne' is clearly a **wrong reading** because **Hebrew parallelism favours 'Thy throne, O God'** in Psalm 45:6.

Notice: verse 3 'Gird thy sword..... O most mighty'.
verse 6 'Thy throne..... O God...'.
verse 10 'Hearken..... O daughter...'.
Ask: In view of Hebrew parallelism, can you see how the Watchtower translation of Hebrews 1:8 ('God is your throne') is wrong?

The writer of Hebrews 1:8 places Jesus on **par** with **God** regarding His **nature**, but **subordinate to God** regarding to **function**.

6. Hebrews 1:6

Why did the Watchtower change 'worship him' in the **1961 edition of the NWT**, to 'do obeisance to him' in the **1971 NWT edition**?

The word for 'worship' in Greek is 'προσκυνεω'⁴³⁵² ('proskuneo'). When one is much inferior, he fell upon his knees and touched his forehead to the ground before his superior, or prostrated himself, throwing kisses to his superior. This is what Greek writers mean by 'προσκυνεω'. It means to kiss, like a dog licking his masters hand; to prostrate; to worship. Another Greek word indicating 'reverence' or 'half-heartedness, non genuine worship' is 'σεβομαι'⁴⁵⁷⁶ ('sebomai') used in:

- i) Matthew 15:9 and Mark 7:7. '...in vain do they worship me'.
- ii) Acts 16:14. '...unconverted Lydia worshipped God'.
- iii) Acts 19:27. 'Diana.....whom all Asia and the world worships'.

If Christ is to be revered as a created being, as the Watchtower claims, then 'sebomai' would be used. But the NT uses 'προσκυνεω' (proskuneo) as **worship to God** and 'προσκυνεω' (proskuneo) as **worship to Christ**. This shows that Christ is 100% God.

Ask: Why does the NWT translate 'προσκυνεω' as 'worship' when it applies to God, angels, devils, the antichrist and images, but when 'προσκυνεω' is used for worshipping Christ as God, they translate it as 'do obeisance'?

Consider these occurrences of 'προσκυνεω' meaning 'worship' in the New World Translation. The KJV always translates 'προσκυνεω' (proskuneo) correctly as 'worship'.

New World Translation of the Word 'προσκυνεω'			
FATHER	CHRIST	ANGELS	DEVILS
Worship	Do obeisance	Worship	Worship
Matthew 4:10	Matthew 2:2	Rev 19:10	Matthew 4:9
Luke 4:8	Matthew 2:8	Rev 22:8	Luke 4:7
John 4:20	Matthew 2:11		Acts 7:43
John 4:21	Matthew 8:2		Rev 9:20
John 4:22 (a)	Matthew 9:18		Rev 13:4 (a)
John 4:22 (b)	Matthew 14:33		Rev 13:4 (b)
John 4:23 (a)	Matthew 15:25		Rev 13:8
John 4:23 (b)	Matthew 18:26		Rev 13:12
John 4:24 (a)	Matthew 20:20		Rev 13:15
John 4:24 (b)	Matthew 28:9		Rev 14:9
I Cor 14:25	Matthew 28:17		Rev 14:11
Hebrews 11:21	Mark 5:6		Rev 16:2
Rev 4:10	Mark 15:19		Rev 19:20
Rev 5:14	Luke 24:52		Rev 20:4
Rev 7:11	John 9:38		
Rev 11:16	Hebrews 1:6		
Rev 14:7			
Rev 15:4			
Rev 19:4			

It is obvious that the Watchtower wants to avoid every reference to Christ being Jehovah God, so they refuse to translate 'προσκυνεω' as 'worship' when it refers to Christ.

Notice these problems with the Watchtower 'obeisance':

- i) **Ask:** Why did the 1961 edition of NWT translate Hebrews 1:6 to say that we should **worship** Jesus, while the 1971 edition says that we should merely **do obeisance** to Him?
- ii) If the NWT is correct in saying that Jesus is a created being and is not to be worshipped, then the Father Himself is guilty of committing a horrible sin by commanding all the angels of God (in Hebrews 1:6) to commit a sacrilegious act in worshipping (προσκυνεω) a mere creature.
- iii) If the NWT is correct in saying that Jesus is Michael the Archangel, then why would God command the angels to worship a fellow created angel (in Hebrews 1:6)? God has clearly stated that worship is to be directed to God alone. 'Thou shalt worship no other god.' Exodus 34:14
'Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God.' Matthew 4:10
- iv) In the NT, **angels are clearly shown to reject worship.**

'I fell at his feet to worship him. He said see thou do it not..worship God.' Rev.19:10; 22:8
Ask: If **angels refused** worship when it was offered, why did **Christ accept** worship 16 times? By accepting worship, He claimed to be God.

Note: The 'προσκυνεω' worship that the angel refused and told John to **give to God**, is the same 'προσκυνεω' worship that the father commanded angels to **give to Jesus** in Heb. 1:6. Hence, Christ was worshipped with the same kind of 'προσκυνεω' worship given to the Father.

Ask: What does it say about Jesus' true identity if He receives the same 'προσκυνεω' worship as Jehovah the Father? (Answer: Jesus' true identity is Jehovah the Son.)

Ask: Is it appropriate to give the Son the same worshipful honour that is given to the Father?

Answer: Yes, says John 5:23 in the NWT, ‘..that all may honour the Son **just as** they honour the Father. He that does not honour the Son, does not honour the Father who sent him.’

Ask: Do you give the Son worshipful honour just as you give to the Father?

7. **Titus 2:13** Why does WT break the Greek **Granville-Sharp Rule** here, by adding [the] which occurs in no NT manuscripts.

NWT	Titus 2:13	KJV
‘While we wait for the happy hope and glorious manifestation of the great God and of [the] Saviour of us, Christ Jesus.’	‘Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.’	

The NWT has mistranslated this verse (by adding [the] **to make two persons**) in order to deny the deity of Christ, a doctrine they refuse to accept.

By adding ‘the’ in brackets, they deny the fact that Paul unmistakably calls Jesus ‘**Our God and Saviour**’. They have made it read as if Paul were speaking of two separate persons here, God and Jesus, rather than one person, Jesus, who is named our ‘Great God and Saviour’.

i) JW’s violate what Greek grammarians call the **Granville-Sharp rule** which states that:

‘When **two singular person nouns** (such as “God” and “Saviour”) of the **same case** (“God” and “Saviour” **are** of the same case) **are connected with “and”** (the Greek word is “καί”) and the modifying **article “the”** (the Greek word “the” is “ὁ”) **appears only before the first noun**, not before the second noun, then **both nouns MUST refer to the same person** (in Titus 2:13, Jesus Christ is both God and Saviour).’

In an exhaustive study, C Kuehne found this Granville-Sharp rule to have no exceptions in the entire New Testament.

Key: ‘The great God and Saviour’ is Jesus Christ. This is agreed to by Greek scholars, B Metzger, J Mantey, K Wuest, A T Robertson and others. They all agree that **only one person (Jesus Christ)** is described in Titus 2:13 as ‘the **great God** and our Saviour’. ‘God and Saviour’ refer to the same person, Jesus Christ.

The presence of only **one definite article** has the effect of **binding together** the two titles ‘God’ and ‘Saviour’.

Ask: In view of what all top Greek scholars say about Titus 2:13, are you willing to consider the possibility that only one person is discussed in this verse, and not two?

Ask: If only one person (Jesus Christ) is discussed in Titus 2:13, then who is Jesus Christ described as in this verse? (Answer: our God and Saviour).

ii) An illustration of this rule applying to the one person is: ‘My wife and friend Tania’.

iii) **Why does the Watchtower get the Granville-Sharp rule wrong when it applies to Christ** (two occasions), and **right everywhere else** where Christ’s Deity is not an issue?

Consider these eight examples:

1) Titus 2:13

KJV: of (**the great God and our Saviour**) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘of **the great God** and of **(the) Saviour Jesus Christ**’ = 2 persons (**wrong!**)

NWT is WRONG because there is no second article to justify ‘the’. (Ask: Where is the 2nd article?)

2) II Peter 1:1

KJV: of (**God and our Saviour**) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘of **our God** and **(the) Saviour Jesus Christ**’ = 2 persons (**wrong!**)

NWT is WRONG because there is no second article to justify ‘the’. (Ask: Where is the 2nd article?)

3) II Peter 1:11

KJV: ‘of (**our Lord and Saviour**) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘of (**our Lord and Saviour**) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

4) II Peter 2:20

KJV: ‘knowledge of (**the Lord and Saviour**) Jesus Christ) = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘knowledge of (**the Lord and Saviour**) Jesus Christ) = 1 person (right)

5) II Peter 3:2

KJV: ‘apostles of (**the Lord and Saviour**) = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘apostles of (**the Lord and Saviour**) = 1 person (right)

6) II Peter 3:18

KJV: ‘knowledge of (**our Lord and Saviour**) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘knowledge of (**our Lord and Saviour**) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

7) I Peter 1:3

KJV: ‘Blessed be (**the God and Father**) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘Blessed be (**the God and Father**) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

8) Ephesians 1:3

KJV: ‘Blessed be (**the God and Father**) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘Blessed by (**the God and Father**) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

iv) In Titus 2:13, the Greek word for ‘**appearing**’ is never used by Paul in the NT of the Father appearing, but is used exclusively of Jesus Christ’s appearing. (See II Thess 2:8,

I Timothy 6:14; II Timothy 1:10 and 4:1,8). Indeed, an appearing of the ‘invisible God’, other than as the visible Christ, would be impossible.

- v) A T Robertson, one of the world’s chief Greek grammar authorities, states in *Word Pictures in the NT*, Vol. VI, p 147,148 regarding II Peter 1:1:

occurrence of God (ὁ θεός = the God). However, there is **no definite article** ‘the’ before the second occurrence of ‘God’.

WT argues (falsely) that, when a noun **has** a definite article (like ‘ὁ θεός’), it points to an identity or personality, such as the person of Jehovah God. The WT claims (falsely) that the same phrase (‘ὁ θεός’) is never used of Jesus Christ in the NT (*Watchtower*, 1 July 86, p31). **(Note: ‘ὁ θεός’ is used** of Christ in Matthew 1:23, John 20:28 and Hebrews 1:8).

The WT claims (falsely) that when a singular predicate **noun** has **no** definite article, and it occurs before a verb (as theos in John 1:1c), then it points to a **quality** about someone, so that here it says that Jesus (the Word) has a divine quality, but is not God Almighty (*KIT*, p.1139). They alone translate Jesus as ‘a god’.

To support this view they quote:

- i) Johannes Greber NT (1937), a spiritist who claimed that spirits helped him translate the NT (*Watchtower*, 15 September 62, p.554; 15 October 73, p.640). The WT knew he was a spiritist in 1956 (*Watchtower*, 15 February 1956, p 110, 111), yet they still quoted him.
- ii) Dr Julius Mantey, who refutes their translation saying: ‘They have forgotten entirely what the (word) order of the sentence indicates that the “λογος” (“logos” or “Word” in English) has the same substance, nature or essence as the Father. To indicate that Jesus was “a god” would need a completely different construction in the Greek. They misquoted me in support of their translation. 99% of Greek scholars and Bible translators in the world disagree with JWs.’

Bible Teaching: The NWT is wrong in translating John 1:1 as ‘a god’ for these reasons:

1. JWs claim that, because the **second** ‘θεός’ (theos) has **no definite article**, we should translate it as **‘a god’**. (*Kingdom Interlinear Translation*, p 1139). Then why has the NWT JW version broken their rule four times in John 1:6, 12, 13, 18 by translating ‘θεός’ **with no article** as **‘God’**? They are inconsistent, as seen below:

Verse 1:

Verse 6:

Verse 12:

Verse 13:

Verse 18:

If the NWT was consistent, they should translate ‘θεός’ as ‘a god’ in these cases too:

- v. 6 ‘There was a man sent from **a god**.’
- v.12 ‘to them gave he power to become the children of **a god**.’
- v.13 ‘nor of the will of man, but of **a god**.’
- v.18 ‘no man hath seen **a god** at any time.’

This is clearly wrong and ridiculous. Why **only** in **verse one** do they refuse to translate ‘θεός’ as ‘God’? Because they don’t want Christ to be Jehovah God. The Watchtower’s mistranslation of John 1:1 is not supported by any Greek grammar textbook.

Ask: Who is right, all the Greek experts in the world, or Watchtower translators who did not know Greek well and **did not** use the Granville-Sharp rule consistently?

8. II Peter 1:1 Why does the WT break the Greek Granville-Sharp rule here by adding [the], which occurs in no Greek manuscripts?

NWT	KJV
‘by the righteousness of our God and [the] Saviour Jesus Christ’	‘through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ’.

The KJV means that Jesus Christ is **‘God and our Saviour’** as the Granville-Sharp rule demands. The WT does not like this. The NWT **changes it to mean that two persons** are discussed: ‘our God’ (one person), and secondly ‘[the] Saviour Jesus Christ’ (another person) different from and less than God. They therefore dishonestly break the link that proves that Jesus Christ is God. The Greek has **no second article** to support the NWT’s inclusion of **[the]**.

Ask: Can you continue in the WT organisation when it shows such gross dishonesty and bias?

9. John 1:1 Is Jesus Christ ‘a god’ or ‘God’?

JW New World Translation	KJV and all others
‘In [the] beginning the Word was, and the Word was with God , and the Word was a god .’	‘In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God .’

Watchtower Teaching: The NWT translates the first ‘θεός’ in John 1:1 as ‘God’, and the second ‘θεός’ as ‘a god’. In the Greek, there is a definite article ‘the’ (‘ὁ’) before the first

Many other verses have ‘θεος’ + no article, and yet are correctly translated as ‘God’, such as Matthew 5:9; 6:24; Luke 1:35, 78; 2:40; John 3:2, 21; 9:16, 33; I Corinthians 1:30; 15:10; Philippians 2:11,13; Titus 1:1; Romans 1:17, 18.

2. JWs say that by translating ‘θεος’ as ‘a god’, then Christ is a lesser god, a divine person.

Answer: If John had intended this adjectival sense (ie ‘the Word was divine’), **he had an adjective θειος (theios=godlike²³⁰⁴) available** to use as found in II Peter 1:3, 4 (‘divine power’ and ‘divine nature’), if Christ was just a divine lesser god.

Instead, John uses ‘θεος’ meaning ‘God’.

Spiros Zodhiates, in his book *Was Christ God?* (p.102), states assertively:

‘It would, therefore, be **totally wrong** to translate the statement that John makes in John 1:1 as “the Word was divine”. The word which is used in the original Greek is θεος (theos) “God”, not θειος (theios) “divine”. Jesus Christ did not merely have divine attributes, but He was God in His essence and nature. He was not a man who attained divinity, but God who humbled Himself to take upon Himself human nature in addition to His deity.’

3. Contrary to the Watchtower claim, ‘θεος’ (God) with the definite article (‘ὁ’) is used of **Jesus Christ** in the New Testament:

i) John 20:28.

ii) Matthew 1:23.

iii) Hebrews 1:8.

Hence, the same word ‘ὁ θεος’ (**ho theos**) used of the **Father** is also used of **Christ**.

4. JWs say that Jesus is ‘a god’. Jehovah disagrees with them in Isaiah 44:8 by saying:

‘Is there **a God** beside me? yea, there is no God; I know not any.’ (KJV and NWT).

Jehovah says that **there is no ‘a God’** beside Him. This shows John 1:1 in the NWT to be wrong. Hence, **Jesus cannot be ‘a God’**, so He must be **‘the God’**.

5. Ancient UNCIAL Greek manuscripts were all written in **capital letters**, so one could not distinguish between ‘God’ and ‘god’, except by the context, and whether the writer believed in one true God or in more than one god.

Ask: Did the Apostle John believe in one true God or more than one true God? Since John believed in one true God, we conclude that Jesus is the one true God in John 1:1.

6. JWs say that Jesus is ‘a god’ with Jehovah, as seen from ‘the Word was with God.’ They say that if Christ is ‘with’ God, He cannot be God.

Answer: ‘with’ (Greek ‘*προς*’) means that Christ was so intimately connected with God, that He is God. ‘There are no gods together with me’. (Deuteronomy 32:39 NWT)

‘There is no god with me’. (Deuteronomy 32:39 KJV)

Hence, Jehovah says that there are **no gods with Jehovah**, so Christ must be Jehovah God.

7. Every **Greek scholar** in the world is against the NWT translation of John 1:1 ‘the word was a god’. Examples include:

M.R.Vincent: ‘The λογος (logos) of John is the real personal God’. (*Word Studies in Gk NT* ,p.383)

K.Wuest: ‘The Word was as to His essence absolute deity’. (*Word Studies in Gk.NT* p 209)

A.T.Robertson: ‘the Word was God, of Divine nature; not “a god”’. (*Expositors Gk Testmnt*, p.684)

Spiros Zodhiates: ‘In John 1:1, Jesus Christ in His pre-incarnate state is called the Word, presenting as the second person of the Godhead.’ (*NT Word Study Dictionary*, p 935)

W.E.Vine: ‘the λογος (logos), the Word, the personal manifestation, not of a part of the divine nature, but of the whole deity.’ (*Complete Expository Dictionary of NT Words*, p683)

8. **All other gods are false gods.**

Hence, Jesus Christ in John 1:1 must be either the only true God Jehovah or a false god. Which one?

9. **Church Writers writing before 325 AD** all agree that John 1:1 is ‘the Word was God’, and that it means that Jesus is fully God and man.

This verse was never disputed before the occultist Greber’s NT was published in 1937. Notice 12 Church writers before 325 AD who all quote John 1:1 correctly as ‘the Word was God’. **Ask:** Why do none of them quote it as ‘a god’?

- These early Church writers **knew Greek** as their **mother tongue** and first language,
 - These men often were quoting from the **original autographs**.
- 1) **Irenaeus**, (120-202 AD) Vol 1, p 328

Vol 1, p 428

Vol 1, p 546

2) **Theophilus of Antioch (115-181 AD)**

Vol 2, p 103,

3) **Clement of Alexandria (153-217 AD)**

Vol 2, p 173,

- 4) Tertullian (145-220 AD), Vol 3
p 488
- p 489
- p 602
- p 607
- 5) Origen (185-254 AD), Vol.4
p 262
- Origen de Principiis p 291
- p 553 Origen against Celsus
- p 603
- p 642
- 6) Cyprian (200-258 AD), Vol 5,
p 516
- p 518
- 7) Novatian (210-280 AD), Vol 5, p 624,
p 624
- p 642
- 8) Hippolytus (170-236 AD), Vol 5, p.288.
- 9) Thaumaturgus (205 AD), Vol 6,p.69
- 10) Methodius (260-312 AD), Vol 6,p.381.
- 11) Alexander (273-326 AD),Vol 6,p.292

12) Tatian's Diatessaron (150 AD),
Vol 10, p 43,

Note: Compare these quotes by Ante-Nicene Church fathers which contradict the Watchtower's invented quotes of Church fathers on p7 of 'Should you believe in the Trinity?'

10. The Watchtower's Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT, p.401) quote of John 1:1, in the left hand column has 'god was the Word', which contradicts the right hand column NWT translation which says 'the word was a god'. Hence the Word (Christ who became flesh, v.14) is called 'God' on the LHS of the page, and 'a god' on the RHS of the page.

11. Greek grammar rules out 'a god'.

JWs say that for Jesus to be Jehovah God here, there should be the definite article 'the' (Greek 'ὁ') before God (θεος). Because 'θεος' does not have the definite article 'ὁ' before it, JWs conclude that 'the word' was indefinite, and means 'a god'.

Answer: A.T. Robertson Greek authority says (*A Grammar of Greek NT*, p.767):

'Nouns in the Predicate: The article is **not essential** to speech....The word with the article ("ὁ") is then the **subject** of the sentence, whatever the word order may be. So in John 1:1, "ὁ λογος", the subject is perfectly clear ("the word" = "ὁ λογος", and it can only be "the word was God".')

Key: Hence the article 'the' (ὁ) points out the subject (ὁ λογος) of the clause, and points out the predicate (θεος) without the article.

If John had written 'ὁ θεος ην ὁ λογος' as the JWs would want, then John would be teaching false doctrine of Sabellianism (that Christ is all of God, that God and Christ are interchangeable, that the Father was the one who became incarnate, suffered and died).

Note: If the article is used with both the subject (ie. λογος) and the predicate (ie. θεος), they would then be interchangeable as the subject nouns are in I John 3:4 (η αμαρτια εστιν η ανομια) then both 'sin is transgression' and 'transgression is sin' are true'.

But in I John 4:16, ' ' can only be 'God is Love', not 'Love is God' (because the article points out the subject). If the Greek language allowed us to say 'Love is God' just as readily as 'God is Love' in this verse, then God would not be a person, but just an abstract quality. (see *Was Christ God?*, Spiros Zodhiates, p.98).

Conclusion: Hence, the absence of the definite article '□' in John 1:1 is deliberate in order to **identify 'the Word' as the subject** of the sentence and to make it only to read as 'the Word was God'. It has nothing to do with Christ being a lesser god as the JWs claim. Hence, contrary to the NWT and The Emphatic Diaglott, the Greek grammatical construction leaves no doubt whatsoever that 'the Word was God' is the only possible rendering of the text.

Colwell's Rule of Greek grammar clearly states that a predicate nominative (□□□□=God) **NEVER** takes a definite article ('□') when it precedes the verb 'was', as in John 1:1.

That is, when two nouns in the nominative case are linked by the verb ‘to be’ (am, is, are, was, were, be, being or been), it may not be clear which is the **subject** and which is the **predicate**. Thus, ‘□ □Ϟ□ϙ ≍■ □ ●□ϥ□ϙ’ could be either ‘the Word was God’ or ‘God was the Word’. However, for the Greek syntax, the **predicate (□Ϟ□ϙ) drops the definite article (‘□’) and is placed before the verb**. Therefore, ‘□Ϟ□ϙ ≍■ □ ●□ϥ□ϙ’ can **only** be ‘The Word was God’, as in the KJV. (see *The elements of New Testament Greek*, J.W. Wenham, p.35)

Notice that since this clause uses a linking verb, both the subject and the predicate are in the nominative case (ie. ‘□ϙ’ ending on the nouns - ‘●□ϥ□ϙ’ and ‘□Ϟ□ϙ’), so case endings do not identify the subject. Instead, the definite article ‘the’ points out the subject of the clause. Greek uses the definite article ‘the’ to accomplish what the English language does by word order (subject first, verb next, then the object in a sentence). Hence, of the three ways that John could have written John 1:1, only **one** is correct.

- i) □ □Ϟ□ϙ ≍■ □ ●□ϥ□ϙ **FALSE** (Not used by John)
can mean either ‘God was the Word’ or ‘the Word was God’. Both the subject and the predicate having the article would have taught Sabellianism, so John didn’t write it this way;
- ii) □ □Ϟ□ϙ ≍■ ●□ϥ□ϙ **FALSE** (Not used by John)
can mean only ‘God was the Word’. This would have clearly taught Sabellianism, so John didn’t write it this way either;
- iii) □Ϟ□ϙ ≍■ □ ●□ϥ□ϙ **CORRECT** (As used by John)
can mean only ‘The Word was God’.

Conclusion. Translations which render the Greek in this verse as ‘a god’ or ‘divine’ are motivated by theological, not grammatical considerations. The phrase ‘a god’ is particularly objectionable because it makes Christ a lesser god, which is polytheism and contrary to Deuteronomy 32:39. If Christ is ‘a god’, then He must be either a ‘true God’ or a ‘false god’. If a ‘true God’, then we have polytheism. If a ‘false god’, then He is unworthy of our belief. Of course, the correct translation found in the KJV and most other translations (‘the word was God’), presents Christ as the one and only true God, Jehovah. Therefore, He is monotheistic and worthy of our belief. John’s high view of Christ as God begins with John 1:1 and ends his gospel with Thomas addressing Christ as ‘my Lord and my God’ in John 20:28. These and other verses assert the full deity of Christ.

10. John 8:58

NWT	KJV
‘Before Abraham came into existence, I have been. ’	‘Before Abraham was, I am. ’

Watchtower Teaching: JWs agree that Jesus was pre-existent (‘I have been’), but will not agree that Jesus was eternally pre-existent (‘I am’). Jesus in John 8:58 claims to be the ‘I am’ of Exodus 3:14 which clearly refers to Jehovah God. They also mistranslate Exodus 3:14:

NWT	KJV
At this God said to Moses: ‘ I SHALL	And God said unto Moses, I AM

PROVE TO BE WHAT I SHALL PROVE TO BE.’ And he added: ‘This is what you are to say to the sons of Israel, “**I SHALL PROVE TO BE** has sent me unto you!”’

THAT I AM: and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, ‘**I AM** hath sent me unto you.’

The effect is that the NWT completely hides the connection between Christ in John 8:58 and Jehovah God in Exodus 3:14. The Watchtower aims to keep Jesus from being identified as God Almighty.

Bible Teaching: Does the evidence point to Jesus calling Himself ‘I AM’ and hence claiming to be God, or to ‘I have been’?

1) Notice in John 8:58 that **Jesus calls Himself ‘ego eimi’ in Greek.**

‘Ego eimi’ occurs 134 times in the Greek New Testament.

Ask: Why is it that the New World Translation correctly translates ‘ego eimi’ 133 times as ‘I am’, except in John 8:58 where a major doctrine of the deity of Christ is at stake, where they go against all their other correct translations of ‘Ego eimi’ and translate it as ‘I have been’?

Question: What does ‘I AM’ mean?

Answer: Yahweh is the eternal self-existent Being, who has always existed. God is beyond the realm of time: ‘Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come.’ (Revelation 4:8b)

‘I am’ in Exodus 3:14 and ‘Yahweh’ in 3:15 are both derivatives of the verb ‘to be’.

2) **Church writers before 325 AD**, always quote John 8:58 as ‘I am’:

- a) **Irenaeus** (120-202 AD)
Vol 1, p 478
- b) **Origen** (185-254 AD)
Vol 4, p 643
- c) **Novatian** (210-280 AD)
Treatise Concerning the Trinity,
Vol 5, p 624.
- d) **Thaumaturgus** (205-265 AD)
Vol 6, p 51

3) **The JW Kingdom Interlinear Translation (1985) reveals that John 8:58 has ‘ego eimi’** (Greek: Ϟ ϥ❖ Ϟ⊙⊙), translating it correctly as ‘I am’. This contradicts the NWT reading.

4) **Jesus claiming the title ‘I have been’ would not have caused the Jews to stone Him.** (John 8:59). Hebrew law gave five cases where stoning was legal:

- i) Having a familiar spirit. (Leviticus 20:27)

- ii) Blasphemy. (Leviticus 24:10-23)
- iii) False prophets who lead to idolatry. (Deuteronomy 13:5-10)
- iv) Stubborn son. (Deuteronomy 21:18-21)
- v) Adultery and rape. (Deuteronomy 22:21-24; Leviticus 20:10)

Here the Jews' reason for stoning was that Jesus clearly claimed for Himself the title 'I am', saying that He was Jehovah God of Exodus 3:14. JW's claim that the Jews attempted to stone Christ because He called them children of the devil (John 8:44). If this is true, then why didn't they attempt to stone him on other occasions when He called them sons of vipers? (Matthew 12:34 and 23:33). Insults were no reason for stoning. Therefore the Jews attempted to stone Jesus for blasphemy because He claimed to be God.

In John 10:31-33 the Jews attempted to stone Jesus for blasphemy for 'making thyself **God**'.

Ask: Who knew the Law better, first century Jews or 20th Century JW's?

5) That '**I am**' means **full Deity** is clear from **John 13:19** where Jesus says that when His predictions come true, the disciples may believe that **ego eimi** (I AM), that He is Jehovah. Since Jehovah is the only 'I AM' (Exodus 3:14), then the Father and Christ are one in nature, power, eternity and fulness of deity.

6) The NWT **always translates 'ego eimi' correctly as 'I am' 21 times in John's Gospel**, except in John 8:58. Why? Examples are:

'I am (ἐγώ εἰμι) the bread of life'. (John 6:35,48,51)

'I am (ἐγώ εἰμι) the light of the world'. (John 8:12)

'For if you do not believe that I am (ego eimi) he, you will die in your sins'. (John 8:24)

'When you have lifted up the Son of Man, then you will know that I am (ego eimi)' (John 8:28)

'I am (ἐγώ εἰμι) the door of the sheep'. (John 10:7)

'I am (ἐγώ εἰμι) the good shepherd'. (John 10:11,14)

'I am (ἐγώ εἰμι) the resurrection and the life'. (John 11:25)

'I am (ἐγώ εἰμι) the way and the truth and the life' (John 14:6)

'I am (ἐγώ εἰμι) the true vine' (John 15:1,5)

'I am (ἐγώ εἰμι) he . . .' (John 18:5,6,8)

Ask: Since all the 'I am' (ἐγώ εἰμι) sayings refer to Christ, why does the NWT correctly translate 'ἐγώ εἰμι' as 'I am', except in John 8:58 where they change it to 'I have been'? Shouldn't there be consistency in translation?

7) The Septuagint Greek translation of the OT translates Exodus 3:14 as '**ego eimi**' in Greek and '**I am the BEING**' in English. This supports the commonly accepted reading.

8) A T Robertson, one of the greatest Greek scholars ever, after translating 'ἐγώ εἰμι' as

'I am', said about John 8:58, 'Undoubtedly here Jesus claims eternal existence with the absolute phrase of **God**.' (*Word Pictures in the NT*, Vol. V, p 158, 159)

10. IS CHRIST INFERIOR TO THE FATHER?

'Christ is equal to the Father as touching His Godhood and inferior to the Father as touching His manhood'. (The Athanasian Creed)

When JW's claim that Jesus was a lesser deity than the Father, they point to verses such as:

- a) 'The Father is greater than I'. (John 14:28).
- b) Jesus referred to the Father as 'my God' (John 20:17).

c) 'The head of Christ is God' (I Corinthians 11:3).

d) Jesus 'will be made subject to him who put everything under him, so that God may be all in all'. (I Corinthians 15:28).

e) Jesus is called God's 'only begotten Son' (John 3:16).

f) Jesus is called 'the firstborn of every creature' (Colossians 1:15).

g) Jesus is called 'the beginning of the creation of God' (Revelation 3:14).

To this we say generally that:

i) Each passage must be examined in its **context**.

ii) Many WT arguments are based on a bad misunderstanding of the **incarnation** of Christ who is **God taking on human form**.

iii) Many passages quoted by JW's view Christ from the point of view of **His manhood**.

Let us examine some such passages:

1. I Corinthians 11:3 - Is God superior to Christ?

'But I would have you know, that the head of every man is Christ, and the head of the woman is the man; and the **head of Christ is God**'.

Watchtower teaching: JW's say that, because Jehovah is the head of Christ, then Christ cannot be God. They say that since I Corinthians 11:3 was written in 55 AD when Jesus was ascended and glorified, then this superior rank of Jehovah over Jesus applies to their present relationship in heaven. They claim that 'Jesus is always presented as a lesser, separate, humble servant of God'. *Should you Believe in the Trinity? p.20.*

The Bible teaching: I Corinthians 11:3 has to do with patterns of authority, not to do with inferiority or superiority of one person over the other. Paul says that the man is the head of the woman, even though men and women are 100% equal in their essential being.

Biblically **men and women** and **equal in nature**.

They are both 100% human, created in God's image, and one in Christ (I Peter 3:7 'Heirs together')

Key: Hence, even though men and women are equal in nature, they function within a hierarchy. In the same way, Christ and the Father are 100% equal in their **divine being and nature**. 'I and the Father are one'. (John 10:30), even though Jesus functions under the Father's headship authority. There is no contradiction to say that among the three persons in the Godhead, there is an **equality of divine being and nature** as well as **two members functioning under the Father's authority**.

Christ is 100% God and fully equal to the Father in being and nature, yet Christ is subordinate or submissive to the Father, especially in becoming a man.

Therefore I Corinthians 11:3 does not teach that Jesus is less than God.

Within the Godhead, the Father acts as Head without diminishing the full deity of the Son.

Ask: Are women **inferior in nature** to men because men exercise headship over women?

Ask: If 'no', then why does the WT teach that the Father's headship over Christ means that **Christ is inferior in nature** to the Father?

2. Revelation 3:14 - 'The beginning of the creation of God'

JW's think that this verse means that Jesus is God's first created being.

They relate this verse to John 1:14 where Jesus is the 'only begotten of the Father'.

Answer:

- 1) The word 'Beginning' is 'Arche' (746) in Greek which has a wide range of meanings, such as:
 - a) **'Head'** in the Hebrew, Greek, English Interlinear Bible. He is called 'the **Head**' because He is before all things, all things were created by Him and for Him (John 1:1-3, Colossians 1:16-17, Hebrews 1:10). It refers to Christ as the One who created all things, not to Him as a created being.
 - b) **'The Active Cause'** as in Colossians 1:18, Revelation 1:8, 21:6, 22:13, 3:14. Christ is called 'the beginning' because He is the **active cause** of creation.
 - c) **Rule, power or authority.** '...power (arche) of the governor' (Luke 20:20). It refers to Christ as the 'one who begins, the origin, source, creator, or first cause'. (Spiros Zodhiates, *NT Word Study*, p.260,261)
 - d) The **Originating source** through whom God works, not the first of the creatures as held by Arians and Unitarians. (A T Robertson, *Word Pictures in NT*. Vol 6,p 321).
- 2) The English word **'architect'** comes from 'arche'. Jesus is the architect of all creation (John 1:3, Colossians 1:16, Hebrews 1:2). Christ is the source and primary fountainhead of all creation.
- 3) **'Arche'** is also **used of God** as 'the beginning and the end'. (Rev. 1:8(not KIT), 21:6, 22:13). The use of 'arche' of God Almighty does not mean that God had a created beginning. God is the beginner and first cause of all creation. 'Arche' in Revelation 3:14 is used of Christ in the same sense as the beginner and first cause of all creation.

Ask: Since 'Arche' used of **God Almighty** does not mean that He had a created beginning, why do you insist that when 'Arche' is used of Christ that it means He had a created beginning?

- 4) It is almost always used of a **ruler or magistrate or principalities**. (Romans 8:38, Ephesians 3:10, Colossians 2:15; Luke 20:20, Jude 6.) The NWT translates the plural of 'Arche' as **'government officials'** in Luke 12:11.
- 5) The English word **'archbishop'** is one who is in authority or rules over bishops. This means that Christ has authority or rule over all creation in Revelation 3:14.
- 6) Christ as the **'beginner'** of creation harmonises with other NT passages about Christ as Creator, such as: Colossians 1:16,17 'by him were all things created'; Hebrews 1:2 'by whom also he made the worlds'; John 1:3 'all things were made by him'. The JW's must **add 'other'** in Colossians 1:16,17 to harmonise those verses.
- 7) Only God is the Creator. 'I am the Lord that maketh all things; that stretcheth forth the heavens **alone**; that spreadeth abroad the earth **by myself**' (Isaiah 44:24). Since Christ is the Creator of all things, this proves that Christ is God Almighty, just as the Father is.

Conclusion: 'Beginning' in Revelation 3:14 is 'Arche' meaning that Christ is the active cause, originating source, architect, beginner; and 'ruler' over creation.

3. **Proverbs 8:22,23 'I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, or ever the earth was'**

- a) Proverbs 8 is not talking about Christ being set up or created, as the Watchtower claims. Proverbs 8:1,2 tells us that it is **wisdom** or understanding which is **personified**:

'Doth not wisdom cry? and understanding put forth **her** voice? **She** standeth . ' 8:1,2. Wisdom and understanding are described as '**she**', but Christ is '**He**'.

- b) If this is talking about Christ, then we must also assume that Christ is a **woman** who cries in the streets (1:20,21), and who lives with someone named Prudence (8:12) in a house with seven pillars (9:1). **Wisdom** is the theme of Proverbs chapters 1-9. See 8:1.

Ask: Do you believe that Christ is a woman who cries in the streets? (Proverbs 1:20,21)

Ask: Was there a time when God had no wisdom? No. Wisdom is as old and eternal as God.

Ask: Where is Jesus Christ mentioned by name in this passage?

Conclusion: Proverbs 8:22,23 is speaking metaphorically about God's eternal wisdom and how it was 'brought forth' to take part in the creation of the universe (v.24).

4. **Colossians 1:15 - 'the firstborn (Greek: prototokos 4416) of every creature'**

JW's use this verse to teach that Jesus was created at a point in time as an angel.

They ignore the evidence and insist that the word 'firstborn' here means 'first created', 'the eldest in Jehovah's family of sons'.

The Bible teaching:

- 1) 'Firstborn' (Greek: prototokos) **does NOT mean 'first-created'** (Greek: protoktisis).

First-created (Protoktisis) is **never used of Christ** in NT. **Ask:** Where is it used of Jesus in NT?

Ask: Why didn't Paul use the term 'first-created' (protoktisis) in Colossians 1:15 if he meant that Christ was the first one created by Jehovah?

- 2) **Ask:** What does '**firstborn**' (Greek: prototokos 4416) mean?

Answer: '**Pre-eminent, Ruler, Sovereign, First in rank**'.

It is used in other passages which refer to Christ:

- i. **Romans 8:29** 'that he might be the **firstborn** among many brethren'. 'Prototokos' presents Christ as the **pre-eminent** member of the group (S. Zodhiates NT, p 1249).
- ii. **Colossians 1:15.** 'The **firstborn** of every creature' Christ is the one **pre-eminent and supreme ruler over all creation** (S. Zodhiates NT, p 1250). v.16 'By him were all things created' means that Christ Himself is not part of Creation (John 1:3).
- iii. **Colossians 1:18** 'He (Christ) is the head of the body, the church: who is the **beginning** (arche), the **firstborn** (prototokos=Ruler) from the dead; that in all things he might have the pre-eminence (proteuon)'. 'Arche' means 'first cause' (Revelation 3:14, Colossians 1:18) and is parallel to 'prototokos' in Colossians 1:15,18, both asserting Christ's pre-eminence. **Note:** 'Proteuon' (pre-eminence) present tense is used only in Colossians 1:18 and indicates not an acquired right to be ruler and pre-eminent, but an **inherent right** by virtue of His nature. Christ, being the Creator, deserves to have pre-eminence.
- iv. **Hebrews 1:6** 'And again, when he bringeth the **firstbegotten** (prototokos=Ruler) into the world, he saith 'And let all the angels of God worship Him'. Alternately, translate this as 'And when He again brings the firstborn into the world', refers to Christ's second coming when Christ as King will be worshipped by the angels. Christ is exalted even above all the angels.
- v. **Revelation 1:5** 'And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the **firstbegotten** (prototokos=Ruler) of the dead, and the **prince** (arche = chief) of the

the kings of the earth.' Here 'prototokos' means that Christ is first of those to be resurrected, and prince (arche) means ruler of earth's kings at His second coming.

Note: JW's compare Christ as the firstborn of all creation with the firstborn son of Pharaoh. This is nonsensical, because it is true that Pharaoh parented his son, but it is not true that 'all creation' parented Jesus.

3) We must understand what the original speaker or writer intended by the words which he used. The ancient Hebrews used the term 'firstborn son' when referring to the pre-eminent son, regardless of whether or not he was the first son born to the parents. The son with the title 'firstborn' had the right of primogeniture which meant that:

- i) He acquired a **special blessing** (Genesis 27);
- ii) He became **heir** of a double share of the father's wealth (Deuteronomy 21:17);
- iii) He replaced his father as the family **head**. He had authority over his brothers;
- iv) He represented the father in civil and religious matters;
- v) He had some **holiness** because through him flowed the common blood of the tribe (Genesis 49:3; Deuteronomy 21:17).

Key: The term 'firstborn' does not refer to the first one born, but to the pre-eminent one in the family. Consider these examples where the son with the title 'firstborn' was not born first:

- (1) **David** was the last born son of Jesse, yet Psalm 89:27 says of him: 'Also I will make him my firstborn, higher than the kings of the earth'. (v.20 onwards refers to David).
 - (2) **Ephraim** was the second born son of Joseph: 'The name of the second called he Ephraim.' (Genesis 41:50-52). Yet 'Ephraim is my firstborn' (Jeremiah 31:9). This was because of his pre-eminent position. Manasseh was born first to Joseph, but Ephraim became the **firstborn** because of his pre-eminence.
 - (3) **Jacob** (Israel) was the second son born to Isaac, after Esau, yet God says of Israel, 'Israel is my son, even my firstborn.' (Exodus 4:22). Esau says of himself, 'I am Esau thy firstborn'. (Genesis 27:19). Esau means that he was born first and should have the birthright. God means that Israel, though born second, took the pre-eminent position. Hence, in this sense Christ is firstborn because of His pre-eminence, not because He was created first as JW's think.
 - (4) **Solomon** was born to David later, and the line of the kings came through Solomon, yet Amnon was born first (I Chronicles 3:2).
 - (5) **Isaac** was born 13 years after Ishmael, yet Isaac took the pre-eminent position in the family.(Genesis 17:19).
 - (6) **Judah** was the fourth son born to Jacob (Genesis 29:35), yet Judah received the dominion and line of Christ, even though Reuben being born first forfeited his right of primogeniture due to fornication (Genesis 49:3,4)
- 4) Firstborn can be rendered **metaphorically**, not meaning born first. Examples include:
- i) Job 18:13 'the firstborn of death shall devour his strength'. As the firstborn son held the chief place, so Job refers to the chiefest (most deadly) disease that death possessed;
 - ii) Isaiah 14:30 'The firstborn of the poor shall feed', means the poorest of the poor.
- Conclusion:** Firstborn does not mean born first or created first. Rather, it is a title of first rank, or pre-eminent position. Paul calls Christ the **firstborn** (prototokos = Ruler). In the NT, Christ is never called the 'first created' (protoktisis).

Ask: What does Psalm 89:27 mean by calling David **firstborn**, when he was the last born son?

Ask: Why didn't Paul use 'first created' (protoktisis) of Christ in Colossians 1:15 if he intended to teach that Christ was the first one created by Jehovah?

5. John 3:16 - 'He gave His only begotten Son'.

Watchtower teaching: JW's teach that the term 'Son of God' refers to Jesus as a separate created being, just as Isaac was called Abraham's 'only begotten son' (Hebrews 11:17), and that Jesus as 'Son of God' was not God Himself. JW's claim that Almighty God is the Father of Jesus in the same sense that Abraham is the father of Isaac. JW's claim that God is the senior, and Jesus is the junior - in time, position, power and knowledge.

The Bible teaching: Isaac was not Abraham's 'only son'. Abraham had begotten a number of other sons, such as Ishmael, Zimram, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak and Shuah (Genesis 25:2). The term 'only begotten Son' means that Isaac was Abraham's **unique** son. Hence Jesus is 'the only begotten Son' in the sense that no-one else is as unique as Jesus. Jesus is alone **all** that God is. '**All things** that the Father hath **are mine**.' (John 16:15). If Christ has all the attributes that the Father has, then Christ is God, because only God has eternality, omniscience, omnipresence, and omnipotence.

Question: What did 'Son of' mean among the ancients? The idea that the title 'Son of God' indicates inferiority to the Father, is based on a faulty conception of what 'Son of' meant among the ancients. Though it can mean '**offspring of**' in some contexts, it also carries the more important meaning: '**OF THE ORDER OF**'

It is used in this way as follows:

- i) 'The sons of the prophets' (I Kings 20:35) meant 'of the order of the prophets';
- ii) The 'sons of the singers' (Nehemiah 12:28) meant 'of the order of the singers';
- iii) 'Of the sons of Asaph' (Nehemiah 11:22) meant 'of the order of Asaph'.

Hence, the phrase 'Son of God' means 'of the order of God' as a claim to Christ's undiminished Deity.

Ancient Jews and Orientals used the phrase 'son of' to indicate sameness of nature and equality of being. When Jesus claimed to be the Son of God, His Jewish contemporaries fully understood that He was claiming to be fully equivalent to God.

Hence, when Jesus claimed to be the Son of God, the Jews said, 'We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of God'. (John 19:7).

'he said that God was his Father, making himself equal with God.' (John 5:18).

Ask: If the phrase 'son of' meant sameness of nature and equality of being among the ancients, as historical records clearly show, then what does this tell us about the meaning of the phrase 'Son of God'?

Christ was Son of God before His human birth:

- i) 'For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world . . .' (John 3:17). That Christ, as the Son of God, was sent into the world, implies that He was the Son of God before His incarnation.
- ii) Proverbs 30:4 shows God as the Creator who has a Son: 'What is his name, and what is his son's name?' This speaks of God the Father and God the Son in present tense terms in OT times.
- iii) 'the form of the fourth is like the Son of God'. (Daniel 3:25). Nebuchadnezzar threw three men into the fiery furnace, yet he saw the Son of God walking with them in the furnace. The Masoretic Text and Septuagint reads, 'Son of God'(singular) not 'a son of the gods' as in the JW New World Translation and the NIV.

6. **I Corinthians 15:28** ‘And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also be **subject unto him** that put all things under him, that God may be all in all’.

Watchtower teaching: JWs cite this passage to teach that Jesus is not equal to the Father and is not God Almighty. (*Reasoning from Scriptures*, p.410). JWs teach that all people and Jesus are in complete subjection to Jehovah God. They say that, if Christ were God Almighty, then He wouldn’t be in subjection to anyone.

The Bible teaching:

1) The word ‘subject’ here does not apply to Christ’s nature or being. It refers to Christ’s **voluntary subjection to the Father** to work out the plan of salvation to become the God-man, the Redeemer, the Mediator, and to save humanity from hell. To be the ideal role-model as the perfect man, Christ had to obey the Father to redeem humanity.

Objection: JWs emphasize that now in the glorified state, Christ is still in subjection to the Father, implying that Jesus is not God as the Father is.

Answer: This assumes that Jesus did not retain His human nature in heaven. If a JW can understand that Jesus still retains His human nature now in heaven and that his humanity will always be in subjection to the Father, then the JW objection is solved. Christ was raised immortal in the very same human body in which He died (Luke 24:37-39, Acts 2:31) and ascended in that same resurrection body (Acts 1:11). As Mediator between God and man, He possesses a human nature (I Timothy 2:5). Christ returns as the ‘Son of Man (Matthew 26:64), a title showing His humanity. Because Christ still possesses his human nature, then He is still in submission to the Father, but His Divine nature makes Him equal to the Father

<p>Key: On the human side, Jesus is lesser than the Father. On the divine side, Jesus is equal to the Father.</p>
--

2) Apart from Jesus’ humanity, Jesus has always been and always will be in subjection to the Father, because of the hierarchical relationship in the Trinity.

Christ has equality of being with the Father, but Christ performs tasks requiring submission or subordination to the Father.

Ask: Do you submit to the police? (Yes)

Are you of inferior nature to the police? (No).

Ask: Is it right for a wife to submit to her husband? (Yes)

Is she therefore of inferior nature to her husband? (No)

So why does WT say that since Christ submits to the Father, He is inferior in nature?

Note: There is no contradiction between an equality of being and a functional subordination among the Persons in the Godhead.

3) I Corinthians 15:28 teaches that, in the plan of salvation, the Son’s role is to mediate between man and God the Father, only until the end of the Millenium. Then, when the task of redeeming man is complete, Christ ceases acting as Mediator, and voluntarily surrenders the Kingdom to the Father. When Christ delivers up the administration of the earthly kingdom to the Father, then the triune God will reign as God and no longer through the man Christ Jesus.

Gabriel’s words are still true in Luke 1:33: ‘He (Christ) shall reign over the house of Jacob forever: and of his (Christ’s) Kingdom there shall be **no end**’.

Conclusion: Christ, as man, will hand over the Kingdom to God the Father (I Cor. 15:24), so that Christ, as God, will reign forever with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

‘His (Christ’s) dominion is an **everlasting** dominion’. (Daniel 7:13,14)

7. **I Corinthians 8:6 - ‘One God the Father . . .’**

‘But to us there is but **one God, the Father . . . and one Lord Jesus Christ . . .**’

Watchtower teaching: JWs argue that, since there is ‘one God’ (Jehovah) who is distinct from ‘one Lord’ (Jesus Christ), then Jesus cannot be God.

Biblical reasoning: If this WT reasoning is correct, then the same logic leads us to conclude that the Father is not Lord.

Note: If the reference to the Father being the ‘one God’ proves that Jesus is not God, then by the same logic we must conclude that the reference to Jesus Christ as the ‘one Lord’ **means that the Father is not Lord**. No JW will concede that the Father is not Lord.

You cannot interpret the first part of the verse one way, and the second part of the verse another way. The faulty logic of JWs here is their assumption that the use of a title for one person (the Father) in one context, automatically rules out its application to another person (Jesus Christ) in another context. JWs should consult what all Scripture says about the Father and about Jesus Christ.

1. The **Father** is called **Lord** in Matthew 11:25: ‘I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth’.

2. **Jesus Christ** is called **God** in John 20:28: ‘My Lord and my God’, and in Hebrews 1:8: ‘Unto the Son he saith: Thy throne O God . . .’ etc.

Hence ‘God’ and ‘Lord’ are used interchangeably of the Father and the Son.

Ask: ‘Can you see that, since Jesus as one Lord does not mean that the Father is not Lord, then by the same logic, the Father as ‘one God’ does not mean that Jesus is not God?’

8. **John 20:17 - ‘My God and Your God’**

‘I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God.’

Watchtower teaching: The JW book *Reasoning from the Scriptures*, p.212, says, ‘To the resurrected Jesus, the Father was God, just as the Father was God to Mary Magdalene’.

JWs argue that because Jesus referred to ‘My father’ and ‘my God’, Jesus cannot be Almighty God Himself.

The Bible teaching: Why did Jesus call the Father ‘my God’? Does this imply that Jesus is not God? No, not at all. Christ had only a divine nature before the incarnation. After His birth as a man, He took on a human nature. Therefore, it is in Christ’s humanity that He acknowledged the Father as ‘my God’.

<p>Key verse: ‘Wherefore in all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God.’ Heb 2:17</p>

Since Christ came as a man and since some of man’s proper duties are to worship God, pray to God and address God as ‘My Father’ and ‘My God’, then it was perfectly correct for Jesus (speaking as a man) to address the Father in prayer and to call Him ‘My God’.

Question: Why didn’t Jesus just say, ‘I am ascending to **our** Father and **our** God?’

Answer: Jesus always carefully distinguished His relationship with the Father from humans’ relationship with the Father.

Key: Jesus was God’s Son by nature, but Christians are God’s sons by adoption. Jesus never spoke of the Father as ‘Our Father’ but as ‘the Father’ or ‘My Father’ (The Lord’s Prayer is how Christians (Our) should pray.)

Ask: ‘Why did Jesus always say ‘the Father’ or ‘my Father’ but never ‘our Father’?’

Conclusion: Because Jesus is **God's Son** by **nature**, He is truly **God**.
Because Jesus is also truly a **man** by **nature**, He can call the Father '**my God**'.

9. **John 14:28 - 'The Father is greater than I'.**

Watchtower teaching: The JW book *Let God be True, 1946, p.110* says that Jehovah is greater than Jesus in his **office** and **person**. Jehovah they say is intrinsically greater than Jesus, and hence Jesus cannot be God Almighty. The JW book *Reasoning from the Scriptures, p.410*, says, 'The fact that Jesus is lesser than Jehovah proves that He cannot be God in the same sense that Jehovah is'.

The Bible Teaching: In John 14:28 Jesus is not speaking about His **nature** or **being** (Christ had earlier said in John 10:30, 'I and the Father are one'), but about His lowly position of incarnation as a man. The *Athanasian Creed* says that Christ is 'equal to the Father as touching His Godhood, and inferior to the Father as touching His manhood'. Christ was here contrasting His human humiliation, shame, suffering, rejection, opposition by enemies, and soon crucifixion, with the Father's majesty, glory and worship by the angels in heaven.

Key: Jesus said, 'The Father is **greater** (Greek: meizon) than I', not 'The Father is **better** (Greek: kreitton) than I'. 'Greater' refers to the **Father's greater position (in heaven)**, not to a greater **nature**. If the word 'better' had been used, this would indicate that the Father had a better nature than Jesus.

- i) The distinction is made clear in Hebrews 1:4 where 'better' (Gk: kreitton) is used to teach Jesus' superiority over the angels in His nature and position.
- ii) This difference between 'greater' and 'better' is seen in this example:
'The President of a country is **greater** (Greek: meizon) **in position** than his people, but as a human being he is **not better** (Greek: kreitton) in nature than his people'.
- iii) Jesus in becoming a man, not only took on a lower position than the **Father**, but also took on a **lower position than the angels**. 'But we see Jesus, who was made a **little lower** than the angels for the suffering of death'. (Hebrews 2:9)

Ask: 'Do you agree that a President is **greater in position** but **not better in nature** than his people?'

Ask: 'In view of **greater** (meaning higher in position) and **better** (meaning higher in nature), is it not clear that in John 14:28 Jesus is speaking of the Father's **temporary higher position** and **not his higher nature** than Jesus?'

Q: How did Christ make Himself of no reputation when He became a man? (Phil. 2:6-9)

1. He **veiled** His **preincarnate glory** in order to dwell among men, but never surrendered His deity or divine glory. On the Mount Transfiguration He allowed His glory to shine briefly. If Christ had not veiled His glory, mankind would not have been able to look at Him. When John saw His glory on Patmos he said, 'I fell at His feet as dead'. (Rev. 1:17).
2. He submitted to a **voluntary non use** of some of His divine **attributes** (on some occasions) in order to achieve His objectives. He never surrendered His attributes, but He did **voluntarily cease using some of them on earth**. Jesus showed His divine attributes of:
 - i) **omniscience** ('He knew all men' John 2:24; 16:30; 'Lord thou knowest all things.' 21:17)
 - ii) **omnipresence** (John 3:13 'the Son of man which is in heaven').
As God He was everywhere at once, but as man He chose to walk there.
 - iii) **omnipotence** (Matthew 28:18 'all power is given unto me'.)

3. He condescended to take on the **likeness** (form, appearance) of man and the form of a servant. (Phil 2:7). His becoming a man involved **gaining human attributes** (subject to weakness, pain, sorrow and temptation), but **not giving up** his divine attributes.

Conclusion: 'The Father is greater than I' (John 14:28) said Jesus from the vantage point of His incarnation as a man. This verse relates to Christ's **voluntary subordination** to the Father to accomplish His work on earth. 'Greater than' refers to His greater **position** not His **nature**.

10. Mark 13:32 'But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no not the angels . . . neither the Son, but the Father'.

Watchtower teaching: JWs say that, because Christ was ignorant of the day of His return, He cannot be Almighty God because God knows all things.

Bible teaching: Christ **before His incarnation** was **one in person** and **one in nature** (100% God) Christ **after his incarnation** was **one in person**, but **two in nature** (100% God and 100% man). He who had always been God, now took on a human nature at his incarnation. The attributes of Christ's human nature and divine nature are both correctly attributed to His one person. Thus Christ at the same time had seemingly contradictory qualities, possessing both human and divine natures:

He was finite, and yet infinite;

He was weak, and yet omnipotent;

He was increasing in knowledge, and yet omniscient;

He was limited to one place at a time, and yet omnipresent.

In Christ's incarnation, His **one person** possesses the attributes of both **divine** and **human** natures. Whatever is true of either His human nature or divine nature is true of His one person. **Christ sometimes operated as a man**, and **sometimes operated as God**, all in the one person. Christ in His **human nature** knew hunger (Luke 4:2), weariness (John 4:6) and sleepiness (Luke 8:23). Christ in His **divine nature** was omniscient (John 21:17), omnipresent (John 1:48) and omnipotent (John 11).

Key: At different times, Christ operated under the major influence of one or the other of His two natures. He operated in the human sphere to achieve His purposes in salvation.

Both of Christ's natures operated in many Gospel events:

- i) Christ's desire to eat a fig as he approached a fig tree reflected that natural ignorance of the human mind (Matthew 21:19). (ie: in His **humanity** He did not know from a distance that there was no fruit on the tree). But then He revealed His **divine** omnipotence by causing the fig tree to wither.
- ii) Jesus in His **divine omniscience** knew that Lazarus had died, so he set off for Bethany (John 11:11). When Jesus arrived, He asked (in His **humanness**, without exercising His omniscience) where Lazarus had been laid (v 34). Jesus, as the God-man is simultaneously **omniscient** as God (along with the Father and the Holy Spirit), and yet **ignorant** of some things as man (along with mankind).
- iii) Jesus in Mark 13:32 was speaking from the vantage point of His **humanity**, as one member of the human race who was not omniscient (not knowing the date of His return). As a man his knowledge was increasing. As God it was infinite. If Jesus was speaking from the vantage point of His **divinity**, He would not have said the same thing.

Note: In Christ's divine nature, He is just as omniscient as the Father. 'He knew what was in man' (John 2:25). 'Now are we sure that thou **knowest all things**' (John 16:30).

'Lord, thou **knowest all things**' (John 21:17).

'In whom are hid **all the treasures** of wisdom and **knowledge**' (Colossians 2:3)

Ask: ‘Can anyone other than God be omniscient?’ (No).

Ask: ‘Since Christ had both a human and divine nature, and since He used His omniscience often, can you see that **Jesus was speaking from His human nature** when He said that He didn’t know the day or the hour of His return?’

11. **Isaiah 9:6 - Is Jesus ‘a Mighty God’ or ‘Jehovah God’?**

‘His name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, the Mighty God (410), the Everlasting Father, the Prince of Peace’.

Watchtower teaching: JW’s concede that Jesus is a ‘mighty God’, but they are adamant that He is not Almighty God as Jehovah is. They think that Christ is one of lesser gods.

Bible teaching: The Bible shows that **both Jesus and Jehovah are called ‘Mighty God’**. Jehovah is called ‘Mighty God’ in:

a) ‘The remnant of Israel . . . shall stay upon **Jehovah**, the remnant of Jacob shall return . . . unto the **mighty God** (410)’. (Isaiah 10:20,21).

b) ‘the Great, **the Mighty God** (410), **Jehovah** of hosts, is his name’. (Jeremiah 32:18). Because Jehovah and Jesus are both called ‘Mighty God’, this proves Christ’s equality with God the Father.

Ask: Since Jehovah is called ‘Mighty God’ (Isaiah 10:21) just as Jesus is called ‘Mighty God’ (Isaiah 9:6), doesn’t this mean that the Watchtower is wrong in saying that ‘Mighty God’ means a lesser deity?

Ask: If **both** Jesus and Jehovah are ‘Mighty God’, then what does this tell you about Jesus’ divine nature?

Ask: If both Jesus and Jehovah are equally ‘Mighty God’, then isn’t this two members of the Trinity?

Note: There is **only one Mighty God in heaven:**

a) ‘I am the first and I am the last; **beside me there is no God** (430)’. (Isaiah 44:6b)

b) ‘Is there **a God** (433) besides Me? Yea, **there is no God**; I know not any’. (Isaiah 44:8b).

c) ‘I am the Lord (YHWH), and there is **none else, there is no God beside me**’ (Isaiah 45:5a). The NWT translates John 1:1 as ‘the word was **a god**’.

Isaiah 44:8b shows this to be false by denying the existence of ‘a god’ other than Jehovah.

The phrase ‘Mighty God’ is ‘Elohim’ in Hebrew, meaning ‘Fullness of power’, portraying Christ as the ‘powerful Governor of the universe’.

Notice that ‘**Elohim** (430)’ is also **used to describe Jehovah God** as:

i) ‘The **God** (430) of the whole earth’. (Isaiah 54:5)

ii) ‘The **God** (430) of all flesh’. (Jeremiah 32:27)

iii) ‘I **prayed to the God** (430) of heaven’. (Nehemiah 2:4)

iv) ‘For the Lord (YHWH) your **God** (430) is **God** (430) of gods....a great **God**.’ (Deut 10:17)

In Isaiah 40:3 **Jesus** is called both **Jehovah** (3068) and **Elohim** (430) in the same verse:

‘Prepare ye the way of the **Jehovah**, make straight in the desert a highway for our **God** (430)’.

Mark 1:3 and John 1:23 apply Jehovah here to Jesus.

Question: What is meant by calling Jesus ‘Everlasting Father’?

Since Jesus is not the Father, why does Isaiah call Jesus ‘Everlasting Father’?

Answer: Jesus considers the Father as someone other than Himself over 200 times in the NT. ‘Everlasting Father’ in Isaiah 9:6 means ‘**Father of eternity**’.

‘Father of eternity’ means ‘**possessor of eternity**’. Hence, Christ as ‘Father of eternity’ means that He is an eternal Being. Only God is eternal. This proves that Jesus is 100% God.

12. **John 17:3**

NWT	John 17:3	KJV
‘This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge (noun) of you the only true God , and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ’.	‘And this is life eternal, that they may know (verb) thee the only true God , and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.’	

This is a most commonly used verse by JW’s in two ways:

1) The NWT changes the Greek ‘**know** (verb in KJV) thee’ to ‘**take in knowledge** (noun) of you’. The JW then offers a ‘free home Bible study’ to take in this so-called knowledge of God. Those who accept the offer are quickly switched from the Bible to a Watchtower booklet. Watchtower facts keep filling their heads as **they take in Watchtower knowledge**, but they never get to really know Jesus Christ as Saviour and God personally. Real Christianity is entering God’s family and really knowing God through Jesus Christ as Saviour (Galatians 4:5-9; Romans 8:14-16). For example: If you ‘take in knowledge’ about a movie star, it does not mean that you ‘know’ that movie star personally.

2) **JW’s use John 17:3 to deny the deity of Christ**. They say that because the **Father is called ‘the only true God’, then Jesus Christ cannot be the true God**.

a) The context is **Jesus as a man praying the great High Priestly prayer to the Father**, and as such it was **proper for the man Christ Jesus to call the Father ‘the only true God’**. Christ would not have said this if it was spoken from the **viewpoint of His deity**.

b) If Jesus’ reference to the Father as ‘the **only true God**’ was meant to exclude the Son from deity, then the same principle of interpretation would have to apply to Jude 4 where Jesus Christ is called ‘**our only owner and Lord, Jesus Christ**’ (NWT). **This would have to exclude the Father from Lordship and ownership**. No JW (or anyone else) would accept this.

They speak of the **Father** as ‘the Lord Jehovah’, even though Jude 4 calls **Jesus** ‘our only Lord’.

The Holy Spirit is also called ‘Lord’ in II Corinthians 3:17, ‘the Lord is that **Spirit**’.

Conclusion: The use of the word ‘only’ is not used exclusively of the Father, nor of the Son, nor of the Holy Spirit.

Jesus being called our ‘**only**’ **Lord** does not exclude the Father or Holy Spirit being Lord. The Father being called ‘**the only true God**’ does not exclude the Son or Holy Spirit from deity.

Ask:

Q1: According to John 17:3, how many true Gods are there?

JW: Only one: Jehovah the Father

Q2: Right. Now, would you agree that whatever is not true must be false? (**JW:**Yes)

Q3: Then, if there is only one true God, all other gods must be false gods, right?(**JW:**Yes)

Q4: Now, according to John 1:1 in the NWT, Jesus is a god. Do you agree with that?(Yes)

Q5: Well then, is Jesus a true God or a false god? (JW: Hmm, I don't know).

Q6: He can't be a false god, can He, since that would mean John was guilty of falsely honouring Jesus as a god? Therefore Jesus must be a true God. But Jehovah is the only true God. Therefore Jesus must be Jehovah.

Note: 'True' means here 'real or genuine' as opposed to false gods and idols.

John 17:3 does not take away from Jesus Christ's deity, because John establishes it elsewhere (John 1:1; 5:18,23; 8:24,58; 20:28).

13. Psalm 110:1 'The Lord (YHWH³⁰⁶⁸) said to my Lord (Adonai¹³⁶) sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.'

Watchtower teaching: JW's say that since Jehovah is speaking in this verse and since the 'Lord' is a distinct person from Jehovah, then Jesus must not be Jehovah God Almighty.

In Matthew 22:41-45 Jesus claims that He Himself is the 'Lord' referred to by David in this Psalm. They therefore conclude that Jesus is not Jehovah, but the one Jehovah speaks to.

Bible Teaching: This verse proves the deity of Christ.

Question 1: Christ asks the Pharisees, 'Whose Son is he (Christ)?' regarding the deity of the Messiah. (Matthew 22:42)

Answer: The Pharisees reply, 'The son of David'. Their answer was correct but incomplete.

II Samuel 7:12-16 shows the Messiah to be the human son of David.

Psalm 110:1 shows the human Messiah also to be God (Adonai), a fact that Christ wanted the Pharisees to acknowledge. Christ anticipated the Pharisees' half-answer.

That's why Christ then asks a question regarding Psalm 110:1.

Question 2: 'The LORD (YHWH 3068) said unto my Lord (Adonai 136), sit thou on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool. If David then call him (Messiah, Christ, Son of David) Lord (Adonai 136), how is he (Adonai=God) his (David's) son?' (Matt 22:44,45)

Answer: Here the first person of the Trinity (God the Father) invites the second person of the Trinity (God the Son) to sit at His right hand.

It seems odd that David would call his own son 'My Lord' (Adonai, a title used exclusively of God). The Messiah would be David's son, but He would also be David's God.

He would be both God and man.

Question 3: Jesus drove the point home to the Pharisees by asking, 'If David then call him Lord (Adonai, Deity), how is he his son?' (Matthew 22:45)

Answer: The Pharisees should have replied that 'David called his son Lord because He is God as well as man.' But they would then be trapped into allowing Christ to be the Messiah, being both man and God. The Pharisees realised their dilemma, so they refused to answer.

Key: Psalm 110:1 proves the undiminished deity of Jesus Christ, because the same word used for 'Lord' (Adonai) in Psalm 110:1 of Jesus Christ (Adonai the Son) is also used of the Father (Adonai the Father) many times in Scripture, such as:

1) 'Three times in the year all thy males shall appear before the Lord (Adonai) God (YHWH 3068)'. (Exodus 23:17).

2) 'For the Lord (YHWH 3068) your God (Elohim 430) is God (Elohim) of gods, and Lord (Adonai 136) of lords, a great God (El 410), a mighty, and a terrible'(Deuteronomy 10:17)

3) 'Behold, the ark of the covenant of the Lord (Adonai 136) of all the earth passeth over before you into Jordan'. (Joshua 3:11)

4) 'And Joshua said, Alas, O Lord (Adonai) God (YHWH)...'. (Joshua 7:7)

5) 'I prayed therefore unto the Lord (YHWH 3068), and said, O Lord (Adonai) God (YHWH 3069), destroy not thy people . . .'. (Deuteronomy 9:26)

Other references to Lord (Adonai¹³⁶) God (YHWH) are:

Deuteronomy 3:24; Exodus 34:23; 15:17; 4:10,11; 5:22; Judges 6:22; 13:8; 16:28;

II Samuel 7:18,28,29; I Kings 2:26; 8:53; Psalm 68:20; 69:6; 71:5,16; 73:28; 109:21; 141:8;

Isaiah 3:15; 28:16; 22:5,12,14,15; 25:8; 40:10; 48:16; 49:22; 50:4; 52:4; 56:8 etc.

Ask: Did you know that 'Adonai' (Lord) used of Jesus Christ in Psalm 110:1 is also used of the Father in Exodus 23:17; Deuteronomy 10:17; Joshua 3:11?

Ask: Can you see that Jesus' statement to the Pharisees in Matthew 22:42-45 was that the Messiah (Christ) would be David's son as well as David's God (Adonai)?

Question: Does 'Adonai' mean Jehovah God?

Answer: Yes, for these reasons:

1) It is linked together with 'YHWH' (Exodus 23:17).

2) Jehovah calls himself 'Adonai' in Isaiah 8:7, 'The LORD (YHWH) spake also unto me again saying:. . . Now therefore behold the Lord (Adonai) bringeth up ...'

3)

(Gesenius' Hebrew Chaldee Lexicon to the Old Testament, p. 12)

4) *WE Vine's Complete Expository Dictionary of OT and NT Words, p.140* states that 'Adonai' applies to God:

The JW claim that Jesus cannot be God because Jehovah spoke to Him, is faulty because we who are from the finite earthly realm cannot assume that God who is of infinite heavenly realms must fit into our earthly logic patterns with which we are familiar. God's ways are

greatly above our ways. For example, in Genesis 18:1-3 **Abraham addressed the three visitors as ‘Jehovah’**. The two who left to visit Sodom, **Lot called them ‘Jehovah’** (19:18), yet the one who remained, **Abraham continued to address Him as ‘Jehovah’** (18:22,26,27,30,31,32,33).

Note: JW's often mockingly ask the question when Jesus prays to Father: ‘Does God talk to Himself?’ Yes He does, as in Genesis 18:17-19 where God asks Himself a question: ‘And Jehovah said, Am I keeping covered from Abraham what I am doing?’

Later in v. 22 Jehovah separates.

Hence the Father can talk to the Son, with the Son still being 100% God.

Ask: If you reject the Trinity because you can't understand it, then how do you explain how a brown cow by eating green grass gives white milk?

14. John 4:23 - Do we worship the Father only? ‘True worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship Him’.

Watchtower teaching: JW's say that only the Father is to be worshipped, not Jesus who they claim to be a lesser deity.

Bible teaching:

1. Early Watchtower editions say: ‘to worship Christ in any form cannot be wrong’. (1880).

Ask: Why did early Watchtower magazines say that we should worship Jesus, while later editions say that we should not?

Ask: Were earlier editions of the Watchtower unscriptural?

2. The NWT shows its anti-Christ bias by translating the Greek word for worship ‘ $\square\square\square\&\diamond\nabla\sqcap\square$ ’ (proskuneo) as ‘**worship**’ when it applies to the Father (21 times), devils (14 times) and angels (2 times), but as ‘**obeisance**’ when it applies to Christ (16 times).

Ask: What rule of Greek grammar do you use to so inconsistently translate ‘proskuneo’?

3. When Christ was worshipped as God, He always **accepted such worship** as appropriate. Jesus accepted worship from:

- i) Thomas (John 20:28);
- ii) a leper (Matthew 8:2);
- iii) a ruler (Matthew 9:18)
- iv) a Syrophonecian woman (Matthew 15:25);
- v) Mary Magdalene (Matthew 28:9);
- vi) the disciples (Matthew 28:17);
- vii) a blind man (John 9:38);
- viii) God does not rebuke the wise men for worshipping Jesus (Matthew 2:11);
- ix) God tells all the angels to worship Jesus (Hebrews 1:6).

4. When **Paul and Barnabus** healed a man at Lystra, the crowd shouted: ‘The gods are come down to us in the likeness of men’. (Acts 14:11). When Paul and Barnabus saw that the people were preparing to worship them, they immediately and severely **rebuked the misconception** that they were gods, by forbidding the people worshipping them.

By contrast, **Jesus never corrected His followers when they bowed down and worshipped Him**.

Jesus’ accepting worship as appropriate, proves He is God in the flesh. If Jesus was a man or an angel, He should have refused worship, as the angel rebuked John in Rev.22:8,9. A man or angel accepting worship is sin. Only God is to be worshipped.

‘Thou shalt worship no other God: for the Lord (YHWH) is a jealous God’. (Exodus 34:14)

Consider the following discussion led by a JW:

JW: Whom do you worship as God? What is his name? (You: The Lord or God).

JW: That’s a title. What is God’s name?

You: Jesus. (Saul in Acts 9:5,17 prays to Jesus, asking ‘Who art thou Lord?’ The Lord replies ‘I am Jesus.’ God should know His name.)

JW: Reads John 4:23 and says, ‘You are not a true worshipper, because you are worshipping the Son. The Bible says here that true worshippers will worship **the Father**.’

Do you know the Father’s name?

JW's then present their standard arguments about the name Jehovah.

JW's preaching theme is: Deny the Deity of Christ, and teach that only the **Father** (Jehovah) must be worshipped. To establish this doctrine they show certain verses, clearly avoiding Isaiah 9:6 (the mighty God), John 1:1 (the word was God), John 8:58,59 (before Abraham was, I am); John 20:28 (My Lord and my God), Colossians 2:9 (in him dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily), Hebrews 1:6 (Let all the angels of God worship him), I Timothy 3:16 (God was manifest in the flesh) all showing the deity and worship of Christ.

You ask JW: While agreeing that the Father should be worshipped, do you respect the Father’s wishes in other matters too? (Yes).

Read John 5:23 where the Father requires ‘that all men should honour the Son, **even as** they honour the Father’. **Do you give worshipful honour to the Son? (No).**

Then your worship of the Father is in vain, because the same verse continues:

‘He that honoureth not the Son, honoureth not the Father which hath sent him’.

The words ‘**even as**’ mean that we must honour both the Father as God, and the Son as God.

Ask: Do you give worshipful honour to the Son as you do to the Father? (No)

Then your worship is in vain and you are not giving worshipful honour to the Father.

15. Mark 10:17,18 ‘Why callest thou me good? There is none good but one, that is, God’

Watchtower teaching: JW's claim that this verse proves that Jesus is not God, as Jesus said, only God is truly good. They say that Jesus here would not accept the title ‘God’. JW's say, ‘Jesus was saying that no-one is as good as God, not even Jesus.’ (Should you Believe in the Trinity, p 17)

Bible Teaching: Jesus was saying to the rich young ruler:

‘You have given me a title belonging only to God. Do you understand and mean that I am God?’ Jesus was not denying that He was God or good.

Jesus was asking him to examine the implications of what he was saying. Jesus asked in effect, ‘By calling me good, are you saying that I am God?’ Jesus did not deny His deity, but His question was a veiled claim to it. Either Jesus was good and God, or a bad man.

Ask: Where in the text does Jesus explicitly say that He is not good?

By asking, ‘Why do you call me good?’ this is not denying Christ’s goodness.

Note: Jesus did claim to be good and hence God: ‘I am the **good** shepherd’. (John 10:14) and ‘There is none good but one, that is **God**’. (Mark 10:18)

16. Hebrews 9:27 In this verse, the Watchtower adds ‘**for all time**’. Why?

This occurs in no NT manuscripts. The NWT does not even place this phrase in brackets. This misleads readers to think that it is part of the NT text.

NWT	Hebrews 9:27	KJV
And as it is reserved for men to die once for all time , but after this judgment.	And as it is appointed unto men once to die,	after this the judgment.

The Watchtower organisation believes that unbelievers will be annihilated, with no continued existence in hell. This is why they add 'for all time', thus giving the meaning that unbelievers die only once, and are annihilated for all time.

The intended, correct meaning is that men die (physically) once, and that they will be resurrected, judged and sentenced to the everlasting lake of fire (Revelation 20:11-15), with a continued conscious existence forever.

The Watchtower have added, 'for all time' to agree with their theological bias on the annihilation of the soul at death. 'For all time' is not found in any NT Greek manuscript.

Ask: Is it right to add words that change a text's meaning as the Watchtower has done?

Ask: Where is the Greek expression 'for all time' in Hebrews 9:27? Show it to me!

Ask: What are you going to do about it?

11. THE TRINITY

Watchtower Teaching: JW arguments against the Trinity are:

- i) If Jesus is God, who ran the universe during the three days that Jesus was dead in the grave? Satan had a great chance to take control.
Answer: Jesus' body died, not His soul or spirit. He along with the Father and the Holy Spirit still ran the universe.
- ii) If Jesus is the immortal God, He could not have died.
Answer: The immortal God, by taking on a mortal body, had His mortal body die.
- iii) Since God is not a God of confusion (I Corinthians 14:33), it is impossible that the Bible would talk of a God who could not be understood by human reason. JWs claim that the Trinity is incomprehensible and unreasonable. 'We worship what we know' (John 4:22).
Answer: Man's lack of understanding has never stopped new discoveries. What percent of the total knowledge of the universe do you possess? (about zero percent).
Ask: Could there be something about God that you don't comprehend?(eg: His Trinity?).
- iv) The word 'Trinity' is not in the Bible.
Answer: Neither is 'Bible', 'organisation', 'Kingdom Hall', 'chocolate', 'motor car', etc. Say to the JW: 'By this logic you would agree that Kingdom Halls don't exist either?' This is shallow reasoning designed to throw the Christian off guard.
If it can be proved that the Bible teaches a certain truth, then naming that truth does not make it unbiblical. We should ask: 'Is the particular teaching in the Bible?'
- v) The Watchtower has misrepresented the Trinity doctrine in order to make its denial more plausible. They erect a straw man that is easily knocked down.
They call the Trinity a 'freakish looking, three headed God' (*Let God be True, p 102*)
'This doctrine of three Gods in one God . . .' (*Studies in Scripture, 1899, Vol 5, p 60,61*)
Note: Trinitarians do not believe in 'three Gods in one God'.
They believe in **one God**, with **three co-equal persons** in the one Godhead.

1. Refuting the Watchtower's FALSE Quotes of Early Church Writers

The Watchtower is quite happy to tell lies by inventing statements allegedly made by six Ante-Nicene Church writers who lived before 325 AD.

Page 7 of their publication '*Should you believe in the Trinity?*' is reproduced on the next

page showing the Watchtower's claims that these ancient writers taught that Jesus Christ was not God. These quotes are false and invented by the Watchtower. They are easily refuted by the photocopied excerpts of the 10 volume set of genuine Ante-Nicene church fathers quotes that prove these early writers strong belief in and defence of the Trinity.

In the Watchtower's false quotes we notice that:

1) None of these references are given a source, making them nearly impossible to check.

It is almost certain that the Watchtower has invented these quotes.

2) Notice the lie of the central bold quote on page 7: 'There is no evidence that **any sacred writer** even suspected the existence of a [Trinity] within the Godhead'.

We refute this Watchtower lie, and prove beyond doubt that both the Trinity and the full deity of Christ were well known and firmly believed as early as 110 AD **as seen from the quotes by the Ante-Nicene (before 325 AD) church fathers which follow the Watchtower quote.**

The following quotes are from the 10 Volume set of *The Ante-Nicene Fathers*, translations of The Writings of the Fathers down to A.D. 325, by editors Alexander Roberts and James Donaldson, American Reprint of the Edinburgh edition, revised and arranged by A C Coxe, published by W.B.Eerdmans, Grand Rapids, Michigan, reprinted in May 1987.

The Watchtower's claim that Constantine and the Council of Nicea introduced the deity of Christ and Trinity doctrines in 325 AD is proven false by these pre-325 AD quotes to the contrary:

i) **Justin Martyr** (110-165 AD),

Volume I, page 263:

‘His Son, being God’

Volume I, page 219

Justin Martyr says::

‘**Christ** existed as God before the ages’

Volume I, page 264)

Justin Martyr says that ‘**Christ is Lord and God**’.

ii) Irenaeus (120-202 AD)

Volume I, page 328 not only shows the NWT to be wrong on John 1:1 but also calls Christ ‘God’

iii) Clement of Alexandria (153-217 AD)

In Volume 2, p 468, written in 193 AD, Clement clearly quotes the Holy Trinity as Father, Son & Holy Spirit.

page 173

iv) Tertullian (200-250 AD)

Volume 3, page 598

page 598

Tertullian against Praxeas,
Volume 3, p.606

Tertullian correctly quotes John 1:1, saying that Christ is God. (Volume 3, p. 607)

Tertullian again quotes the Trinity on a fourth occasion. (Vol 4, page 99)

v) Hippolytus (170-236 AD)

Volume 5, page 228 mentions the Trinity and quotes John 1:1 correctly.

vi) Origen (185-254 AD)

Volume 4, page 255. Twice he quotes the word ‘Trinity’, as Father, Son and Holy Spirit

Also on page 258 he quotes the Trinity in ‘*Origen de Principiis*’, written in 230 AD.

vii) Thaumaturgus (205-265 AD)

Volume 6, pages 42, 45

2. Is the Trinity a Pagan Concept? No! Because:

i) The Babylonians and Assyrians believed in triads of gods, which were three separate gods (polytheism) governing other gods. This is totally different from the Trinity of only one God (monotheism) with three persons within the one Godhead.

ii) Triads of gods pre-date Christianity by about 700 years and were far removed from Israel..

iii) Some pagan ideas have some truth in them, such as the pagan Flood legends. Just because pagans spoke of a concept that remotely resembles a biblical concept, does not mean that Christians stole it from the pagans.

iv) JWs quote Hislop's *The Two Babylons* to support their case, yet they don't tell us that Hislop believes in the Trinity, as seen from Hislop's quote:

'They all admitted a **Trinity**, but did they worship the **Triune Jehovah?**' (p. 90)

- About **80% of the sources** that the WT quotes are from **Trinitarians**. This begs the question: 'How can the WT disprove the Trinity by quoting sources who believe the Trinity?'
- **15%** of their sources are secular works like *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.
- **5%** of WT sources are **invalid sources of Biblical truth**, eg: sceptics, spiritists, Unitarians.
- The WT always finds some **unknown, obscure** person to agree with them. They do not examine the **credibility** of such sources. Most WT sources have no credibility & no authority.
- The WT rarely gives **page numbers** of its quotes to allow check the **source** and **context**.

v) JWs claim they represent the 'faith once delivered to the saints'. They claim that the Trinity idea was introduced in 325 AD. What they don't say is that current WT teachings have **no precedent in history**. They do not say who were the JWs of the first three centuries or later. No early church 'father' represented their beliefs. The WT is historically bankrupt.

vi) The WT, by showing a **three-headed god**, use the 'straw-man effect', where they misrepresent what Christians believe, and then proceed to 'shoot down' this 'straw man'. This is seen in five pictures of three-headed gods which are supposed to represent the God of Christendom. ('*Should you believe in the Trinity*' p 10).

vii) The WT is happy to **misquote sources** to prove their point.

Consider page 6 '*Should you believe in the Trinity*', where they misquote the *New Encyclopaedia Britannica* by failing to give the full relevant quote. They stop the quote at the asterisk *

'The Encyclopaedia Britannica (1976 Edition) correctly states:

"Neither the word Trinity, nor the explicit doctrine as such, appears in the New Testament",'

[*They stop the quote here, ignoring the rest of the article which endorses the Trinity:]

*'nor did Jesus and his followers intend to contradict the Shema in the Old Testament: 'Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God is one Lord' (Deuteronomy 6:4). The earliest Christians, however, had to cope with the implications of the coming of Jesus Christ and of the presence and power of God among them - ie, the Holy Spirit, whose coming we connected with the celebration of Pentecost. The Father, Son, and Holy Spirit were associated in such New Testament passages as the Great Commission: 'Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit' (Matthew 28:19); and in the apostolic benediction: 'The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ and the love of God and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all' (2 Cor. 13:14). Thus, the **New Testament established the basis for the doctrine of the Trinity**. The doctrine developed gradually over several centuries and through many controversies.*

Any early church council disputes were over fine points of Trinity clarification, such as the substance, nature and omnipotence of Father, Son and Holy Spirit, never over whether the Trinity was right or wrong. The truth of the Trinity was always accepted.

3. Refuting Watchtowers' wrong application of I Corinthians 14:33

'for God is not the author of confusion, but of peace . . .'

Watchtower Teaching: JWs say that because God is not the author of confusion, the Trinity doctrine cannot be true because it is so unreasonable. How can the Father, Son and Holy Spirit each be God, and yet there be only one God? It doesn't make sense to them.

Bible Teaching: Just because one is unable to fully understand something, doesn't mean that it is false.

i) Finite humans cannot possibly understand everything about the infinite God.

'How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out.' (Romans 11:33)
'For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the Lord. As the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts'. (Isaiah 55:8,9)

ii) Can you fully understand how light can be both a particle of matter and a wave form?

iii) Can you fully understand how God did not have a beginning? (No) Do you reject the idea?

Ask: Should we reject the Trinity doctrine because we don't fully understand it, when we accept other things about God and the universe which we don't fully understand.

I Corinthians 14:33 means that a church should avoid disharmony in its services by only having two or three prophets speak in a service, and only one at a time.

'Confusion' means 'parts of a whole which are at strife with one another'.

'Peace' means 'parts of a whole acting in harmony'.

4. Refuting WT's misunderstanding of John 17:3 (See earlier study on page 868)

5. Refuting WT's misunderstanding of Deuteronomy 6:4 and Mark 12:29

'Hear, O Israel, the Lord (YHWH) our God (Elohim) is one Lord (YHWH).' (Deut 6:4)

Watchtower teaching: JWs say that, since God is one, He cannot be Triune at the same time. Why would God speak as one person if He were composed of three persons?

Bible teaching: The ordinary name of God (Elohim) is in the plural form

'Hear, O, Israel, Jehovah our Elohim, one Jehovah.' Deut.6:4

If God had intended to assert a solitary, exclusive type of unity, the expression would have been 'Eloah', not the plural 'Elohim'.

It does not say: 'Hear, O Israel, Jehovah, our Elohim, one **Eloah**.'

The use of Elohim (a uniplural noun) means: 'there is a real plurality, yet Jehovah is one.'

Ask: Who is Jehovah? Is it the Father alone? Is Jesus Jehovah? Is the Holy Spirit Jehovah?

If we can find verses teaching that Jesus is Jehovah (or God) and the Holy Spirit is Jehovah, then we have proved the Trinity.

i) **The Holy Spirit is called Jehovah**: 'Now **Jehovah** is the Spirit'. (II Corinthians 3:17 NWT)

ii) **Jesus Christ is called God**, as follows:

(1) 'Our Lord Jesus Christ who is the blessed and **only Potentate**, the King of kings, and Lord of lords; who only hath immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach unto' (I Tim 6:14-16)

(2) 'The Word was **God**.' (John 1:1)

(3) 'of the great **God** and our Saviour Jesus Christ' (Titus 2:13)

(4) 'the righteousness of **God** and our Saviour Jesus Christ'. (II Peter 1:1)

(5) 'if ye believe not that **I am, ye shall die in your sins**.' (John 8:24)

(6) 'Before Abraham was, **I am**.' (John 8:58)

(7) '**God** was manifest in the flesh'. (I Timothy 3:16)

(8) 'Thomas said unto **him**, My Lord and **My God**'. (John 20:28)

(9) 'in him dwells **all** the fullness of the **Godhead** bodily.' (Colossians 2:9)

(10) 'unto the **Son** he saith, Thy throne, O **God** is forever.' (Hebrews 1:8)

(11) 'If you publicly declare . . . that Jesus is **Lord**.' (KIT: 'ha Adon' in Hebrew footnote of Romans 10:9. In the 1961 edition of NWT, p.1453, 'ha Adon' = Jehovah).

(12) 'that he (Christ) might be **Lord** both of the dead and the living'. (Romans 14:9).

In verses 6-11 of NWT 'Ⲁⲓⲛⲁⲓⲛⲁⲓⲛⲁⲓ' (Lord) is translated 7 times as Jehovah, except in v.9. Why?

(13) 'in his **Son Jesus Christ**. This is the **true God**, and eternal life.' (I John 5:20)

(14) 'feed the church of **God**, which he hath purchased with **his own blood**.' (Acts 20:28)

6. Notice how God reveals Himself in stages to man:

(1) God revealed His Unity as the one and only true God, to refute the nations' many gods.

(2) God revealed the Trinity (Jehovah=Father+Son+HS) in the Old Testament in:

'**Jehovah** your God is **God of gods** (the Father), and **Lord of lords** (the Son)'. (Deut.10:17).

'Thus saith **Jehovah** the King of Israel (the Father), and his redeemer **Jehovah** of hosts (the Son). Is44:6

'**God** said "let **us** make man in **our** image . . ."' Genesis 1:26

'**Jehovah** God said, "Behold the man is become as one of **us** . . ."' Genesis 3:22

'**Jehovah** came down . . . the **Lord** said, let **us** go down . . ."' Genesis 11:5,7

'the **Lord** saying . . . who will go for **us**?' Isaiah 6:8

'What is **his** name....and what is his **Son's** name.' Proverbs 30:4

'the **Lord God** (the Father), and his **Spirit** (HS), hath sent **me** (Jehovah the Son).' Isaiah 48:16.

(3) God revealed the fullness of the Trinity doctrine in the New Testament:

Matthew 28:19 'baptizing them in the **name** (singular name, not plural) of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.'

I John 5:7 'There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are **one**.'

Revelation 22:1,3,4 'the **throne** (of God and of the Lamb) shall be in it; and **his servants** shall serve him; they shall see **his face**, and **his name** shall be in their foreheads.'

Key: God and the Lamb have **one throne, one name, one face** and **one ownership of servants**.

II Corinthians 13:14 'The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost'. There is one God, but three persons within the Godhead.

(4) Early Christians with a strong Jewish background, who knew Deuteronomy 6:4, continually **refer to Jesus** as '**Lord**' and '**God**' (Romans 10:13, I Thess 5:2, I Peter 2:3, 3:15.) They often apply to Jesus many Old Testament texts which refer to Jehovah, such as:

a) Jesus Christ in Matthew 3:1-3 fulfils Isaiah 40:3 to '**Prepare** the way of Jehovah' and Elohim.

b) Jesus Christ's **glory** in John 12:41 is Jehovah's glory in Isaiah 6:1-5.

c) Jesus Christ's **voice** as the sound of many waters in Revelation 1:15 is identical to Jehovah's voice as the sound of many waters in Ezekiel 43:2.

d) Jesus Christ being **pierced** in Rev 1:7 is the same one as Jehovah being pierced in Zech 12:10.

e) Jesus Christ being **called on for salvation** in Romans 10:13, is the same as Jehovah being called on for salvation in Joel 2:32

f) Jesus Christ, the Lamb, is the **everlasting light** in Revelation 21:23, just as Jehovah 'shall be . . . an everlasting light' in Isaiah 60:19,20.

Ask: Do you agree that Trinitarians believe Deuteronomy 6:4 that there is only one true God?

Ask: Do you understand that Trinitarians **don't** teach that there are three gods in the Trinity, but that there is only **one God** with three persons within the one Godhead?

Ask: How do you explain that the early Jewish Christians who believed Deuteronomy 6:4, applied to Jesus many Old Testament texts that were originally written of Jehovah?

12. BIBLE PROOFS OF THE TRINITY

Key: The Father, Son and Holy Spirit are so clearly and consistently linked in Scripture that, assuming that God is not three persons, makes it impossible to understand some passages.

Though Jews exalt human reasoning against the Trinity doctrine, saying it is unreasonable, those who submit to God's Word must conclude that it is unreasonable to doubt the Trinity.

Consider these scriptures proving the Trinity:

1. Matthew 28:19 The 'Name' of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.

Watchtower teaching: Jews ask, 'Does this verse prove the Father, Son and Holy Spirit are equal in substance, power and eternity?' They say, 'No, no more than listing three people Tom, Dick and Harry mean that they are three in one.' They say that the Trinity doctrine is imposed on the text, not derived from it.

Bible Teaching: The key point is that the word '**name**' is **singular** in the Greek NT, thus proving that there is **one God**, but **three distinct persons** within the Godhead.

This proves the Trinity because Jesus did not say:

i) 'into the **names** (plural) of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit.'

ii) 'into the **name** of the Father, and into the **name** of the Son, and into the **name** of the Holy Spirit', as if we had three separate beings.

iii) 'into the **name** of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit' omitting the three articles (the), as if the Father, Son and Holy Spirit might be three designations of a single person.

What He does say is:

'into the **name** (singular) of **the** Father, and of **the** Son, and of **the** Holy Spirit'.

Jesus first teaches the unity of the three by combining them all within a single name.

He then teaches that each is a different person by introducing each of them in turn with the article (tou):

Ask: Can you see that rules of grammar dictate **plurality** (the, the, the) within **unity** (the name), because the word 'name' is singular and definite articles (Greek: tou) are placed in front of Father, Son and Holy Spirit?

Other verses showing '**three-in-oneness**' of the Godhead are:

- i) **At the creation of man**, 'God said, let **us** make man in **our** image, after **our** likeness . . .' (Genesis 1:26). 'Our image' in v. 26 is explained as God's image in v. 27.
The one true God consists of three persons who are able to confer with one another and carry out their plans together, while still being one God.
- ii) **After the Fall**, 'the **Lord (Jehovah)** God (Elohim) said, Behold, the man is become as one of **us** . .' (Genesis 3:22)
'Us' refers back to LORD (Jehovah), showing plurality within the Jehovah Godhead.
- iii) **At the Tower of Babel**, 'the **LORD (Jehovah)**, said . . . let **us** go down' (Genesis 11:6,7).
- iv) **Isaiah** 'saw the **Lord (Adonai)** sitting upon a throne (v.1) mine eyes have seen the King, the **LORD (Jehovah)** of hosts (v.5). I heard the voice of the **Lord (Adonai)** saying:
'Whom shall I send, and who will go for **us**?' (Isaiah 6:1,5,8)
Here Isaiah sees '**Adonai**' on the throne, then Isaiah calls Him '**Jehovah** of hosts' (v.5). Then Adonai asks, 'Who will go for **us**?' The 'us' shows plurality in the Jehovah Godhead. This equivalence of Adonai and Jehovah (both called 'us') proves the Trinity Godhead.

2. **Genesis 18 and 19. Three men each called Jehovah.**

JWs believe that it is impossible for Jehovah God to exist as three persons: Father, Son and Holy Spirit. Yet Genesis 18 and 19 shows Jehovah appearing to Abraham as three men. This shows that even the impossible from a human viewpoint is possible with God. Notice that:

- i) Abraham addresses the three as '**Jehovah**' (v.3 NWT);
- ii) When **two** of the three men **depart** to visit Lot in **Sodom**, Abraham continues to address the remaining one as '**Jehovah**' (Genesis 18:22,26,27,30,31,32,33).
- iii) Lot addressed the other two as '**Jehovah**' (Genesis 19:1,18 NWT).
'Then Lot said to **them**: "Not that please, **Jehovah**".' (19:18 NWT)
- iv) 'Then **Jehovah** made it rain sulphur and fire from **Jehovah**, from the **heavens** upon Sodom and Gomorra.' (Genesis 19:24)

Notice the mention here of two Jehovahs, one in heaven who sends judgment on Sodom and Gomorra, at the bidding of the other Jehovah on earth.

This gives strong evidence for **more than one** person in the Godhead. The Jehovah upon earth was one of three persons to visit Abraham, one of whom stays behind to speak further to Abraham and is called **Jehovah**. (Genesis 21:1 '**Jehovah** turned his attention to Sarah'). Hence this shows that it is possible for Jehovah to manifest Himself as three-in-one.

3. **II Corinthians 3:17 - 'Jehovah is the Spirit'** (NWT).

JWs challenge Christians to prove the Trinity in the Bible. This can be done if we find verses teaching that the Holy Spirit is Jehovah God, and the Son is Jehovah God.

II Corinthians 3:17 teaches this by saying: 'Now Jehovah is the Spirit.'

How much clearer can it be than this, which states that the **Holy Spirit is (=) Jehovah God**? This proves the Deity of the Holy Spirit, and the existence of 2 persons in the Godhead.

4. **I John 5:7,8 The Johannine Comma**, the famous Trinitarian proof text (3 Heavenly witnesses)

NWT	KJV
'For there are three witness bearers, OMIT OMIT OMIT the Spirit, and the water and the blood, and the three are in agreement.'	'For there are three <u>that</u> (oi= masc) bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. And there are three that bear record in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and <u>these</u> (oi= masc) three agree in one.'

Watchtower teaching: JW's claim that this passage ought not to be in the Bible, because it is not in most Greek manuscripts. It is omitted by most modern Bible versions. '

Bible Teaching: Erasmus omitted it from his first edition of the printed Greek NT (1516), because it occurred in the Latin Vulgate and not in any Greek manuscript. To quieten the outcry that followed, he agreed to restore it if it could be found in one Greek manuscript. Two Greek manuscripts, Codex 61 and 629 were found, so Erasmus included it in his 1522 edition. Since these manuscripts are late (14th and 15th Century), some think the readings are corrupt. What do we answer? (See page 805-806).

5. In **II Corinthians 13:14**, (the Apostolic Benediction) why is there a change in the order of the persons of the Trinity, compared to Matthew 28:19, if not to show that 'in this Trinity none is before or after the other, and none is greater or less than another'?

'The grace of the **Lord Jesus Christ**, and the love of **God**, and the communion of the **Holy Ghost**, be with you all. Amen.' (II Corinthians 13:14)

'Baptising them in the name of the **Father**, and of the **Son**, and of the **Holy Ghost**.' Matt. 28:19

13. **PROOF THAT JESUS CHRIST IS JEHOVAH GOD**

The Bible proves the co-equal Deity of Jesus Christ with God the Father by:

- i) **Explicit statements** that Christ is Jehovah and God
 - ii) Both the Father and the Son have the **same attributes, claims and majesty**.
 - iii) **Appearances of Jehovah God** the Son to Old Testament saints who worshipped Him.
 - iv) New Testament Examples of Prayer to Christ
 - v) Father and Son have the **same divine offices**
- Let us consider each of these proofs:

I. **EXPLICIT STATEMENTS THAT CHRIST IS JEHOVAH GOD**

1. **Isaiah 9:6 - 'His name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The Mighty God.'**

In **Isaiah 9:6** **Jesus** is called '**the mighty God**' (Hebrew '*El Gibbor*' means 'God the mighty'). This is the title of **Jehovah God** in Isaiah 10:21, Jeremiah 32:18 & Habakkuk 1:12.

a) 'Jehovah...The remnant shall return ...unto the mighty God'. Isaiah 10:21

b) 'the Great, the Mighty God, Jehovah of hosts, is his name...' Jeremiah 32:18

c) 'O Jehovah,...O mighty God, thou hast established them for correction'. Habakkuk 1:12.

Are there two mighty Gods? No! That would be polytheism.

Hence Jesus is Jehovah, the Mighty God.

Ask: Since Isaiah was a Jew, and believed in only one God (Jehovah), who did Isaiah understand the Mighty God to be? (obviously Jehovah).

Ask: Then why did Isaiah call Jehovah the Mighty God (in 10:20,21), and also call Christ the Mighty God (in 9:6)?

Ask: Who does this make Christ to be? (clearly Jehovah, the Mighty God.)

Conclusion: There is one God. He is revealed in the OT as Jehovah.

In the NT He is revealed as Jehovah the Son (part of the Triune Godhead).

Question JW's might ask:

- 1) To whom did Jesus pray on the cross if He was God?
- 2) When Jesus was baptised, whose voice came from heaven, his own voice? No, the Father's.

Answer: JW's have not been able to distinguish between God the Father and God the Son. Therein lies their difficulty. As to how **two persons** can be **equally the one God**, and yet be separate is **not explained** in the Bible, but it is **taught**. God ought to know who He is. Who are we to argue with God? JW's pride must bend, and their will must bow to Jesus as Jehovah God. Tied in with the **Deity of Christ** is His **Saviourhood**.

2. Isaiah 44:6 'Thus saith **Jehovah the King of Israel** (the Father), and **his redeemer Jehovah of hosts** (Jesus Christ); **I am the first**, and **I am the last**; and **beside me there is no God.**'

a) Here **two members of the Jehovah Godhead** are speaking, **each of whom are called Jehovah**. b) Jehovah the Father and Jehovah the Son **jointly claim** the title 'I am the first, & I am the last'. Notice that the Lord Jesus Christ calls Himself by this title 'I am the first and the last' in Revelation 1:17,18 and in Revelation 2:8.

c) The first person Jehovah **owns the second person Jehovah** as seen by the possessive pronoun '**his**', describing the Lord Jesus Christ as "Jehovah's redeemer" and "Jehovah of hosts". This proves that two related persons are in the Jehovah Godhead.

d) The New Testament reveals 'Jehovah the Redeemer' to be Jesus Christ in Galatians 3:13 'Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law..'. See also Rev.5:9 and I Peter 1:18.

e) The NWT rearranges v.6 to make one person, not two persons speaking as Jehovah. They do this by putting 'said' between 'Jehovah' and 'the King of Israel' which has the effect of confusing the reader so we don't know if 'Jehovah' is or isn't 'the King of Israel'.

Notice that: 1) the Hebrew Masoretic text, and 2) the Septuagint translate it correctly, but the 3) JW NWT translates it wrong as usual.

1)

2) Septuagint

3)
NWT

3. Isaiah 48:12,16 'I am the first, I also am the last' (v.12). *This is Jehovah the Son speaking.* 'Come ye near unto **me** (Jehovah the Son, Jesus Christ), **hear ye this** (*something important*)and now the **Lord God** (Jehovah the Father), and his **Spirit** (Jehovah the Holy Spirit), hath sent **me** (Jehovah the Son)' (v.16).

a) This describes how **God the Father** and **God the Holy Spirit send Jehovah the Son** to earth to redeem mankind. Verse 17 shows the speaker to be Jehovah the Son by the phrase 'Thus saith **Jehovah**, thy **Redeemer**, the Holy One of Israel; **I am Jehovah thy God...**' (v.17). Here, Jesus Christ as well as being 'thy Redeemer' is also called 'the Holy One.' See Acts 3:14.

b) This also shows the existence of **three persons called 'Jehovah'** in the Jehovah Godhead. The **Lord God** and **His Spirit** send **Jehovah the Son** who calls Himself 'the first and the last'.

4. In Zechariah 2:8-11, Jehovah the Son states twice that **Jehovah the Father** has sent Him to Israel. This proves that there are at least **two persons** in **the Godhead, both called Jehovah**.

v.8 'For thus **saith Jehovah of hosts** (the Son) . . .'

v.9 'Ye shall know that **Jehovah of hosts** (the Father) hath **sent me**'.

v.11 '**I** (Jehovah the Son) will dwell in the midst of thee, and thou shalt know that **Jehovah of hosts** (Father) hath sent me unto thee.' (Zechariah 2:8-11)

Lesson: Jehovah (the Father) sends Jehovah (the Son). Two persons here are named Jehovah. This clearly proves that Jesus Christ in His pre-incarnate state is **fully Jehovah God**.

5. In Zechariah 3:2: 'Jehovah said unto Satan, Jehovah rebuke thee, O Satan'.

Again, one person in the Jehovah Godhead speaks about another person in the Jehovah Godhead. (See Isaiah 48:16 'the Lord God (Father) and his Spirit, hath sent me (Son)').

Rules of Grammar dictate that the sentence be understood as follows:

'**Jehovah** (the first person=person speaking) said unto **Satan** (the second person=person spoken to), **Jehovah** (the third person=person spoken about) rebuke thee.'

6. John 1:1 - 'The word was God' (See page 850-855)

a) In John 1:1, the **KIT** left-hand column **states that Jesus is God: 'God was the Word'**, but in the right-hand column the NWT contradicts the KIT by saying 'the Word was **a God**'.

Also, see the *Emphatic Diaglott (a JW version)* by Benjamin Wilson who was honest enough to translate John 1:1 correctly in the right-hand column as '**the Logos was God**'.

b) In John 1:1 we read of Jesus Christ: 'the Word was **WITH** God, and the Word was God'. The Watchtower denies that Jesus is fully God, but says that Jesus is a '**little God**' who is **with Jehovah**. Does such a 'little God' exist with Jehovah? No because:

Moses and **Jehovah** contradict the WT by saying in Deuteronomy 32:39: 'there is **NO GOD WITH** me'.

Isaiah and **Jehovah** also contradict the Watchtower by saying in Isaiah 44:8: 'Is there **a God beside me**? yea, there is **no God**; I know not any'.

Logic: Since Jesus is **not a 'little God'**, and He is **with God**, then He must be **true God**.

Ask: Who do you believe, Jehovah, Moses, and Isaiah on the one hand, or the Watchtower?

7. John 1:3 and Malachi 2:10. Christ and the Father are the ONE GOD of Creation.

In **Malachi 2:10** we read, 'hath not **one God** created us?'

Comparing this with the NT, we see this **ONE GOD** of Creation to be Jesus Christ:

'**All things** were made **by him**; and without him was not anything made that was made'. John 1:3 'For **by him** were **all things** created, . . . **all things** were created **by him** and **for him**.'

(Colossians 1:16; Hebrews 1:2,10)

Conclusion: Do you agree that this proves that:

If **Jesus Christ** = Creator of all things by himself, and **One God** = Creator, then **Jesus Christ = the One God**.

Ask: Why does the WT add '[other]' five times in Colossians 1:16,17,20 when it is not in any Greek text? Not even the JW KIT has 'other' in its Greek text. The WT thinks that, by adding '[other]' it will break the connection that proves Jesus Christ is the One God of Creation.

8. In **John 3:13**, John states that Jesus Christ is **God** because He is **OMNIPRESENT**: ‘even the Son of man which **IS IN HEAVEN**’. Only God can be in two places at once, on earth talking to Nicodemus and at the same time in heaven. (See p.814).

9. **John 4:42** **Christ and the Father are the ‘only Saviour’.**

In **John 4:42**, the woman at the well declares of Jesus that ‘this is indeed the Christ, the **Saviour** of the world’.

In **Titus 1:3,4**, God and the Lord Jesus Christ are both declared to be ‘**our Saviour**’ ‘**God our Saviour**’ (v.3), and ‘**Lord Jesus Christ our Saviour**’ (Titus 1:4).

Comparing these with **Isaiah 43:11** and **Hosea 13:4** each of which state that there is **NO SAVIOUR BESIDES JEHOVAH**, we learn that because Jesus Christ is **our Saviour** so also He must be **Jehovah God**.

Since **Jehovah God** = our only Saviour, and, Since **Jesus Christ** = our only Saviour, then, **Jehovah God = Jesus Christ**.

This is true because **no-one else** other than Jehovah is allowed to be ‘our Saviour’.

‘I, even I, am Jehovah; and **beside me there is NO SAVIOUR**’. (Isaiah 43:11)

‘I am Jehovah thy God . . . **there is NO SAVIOUR beside me**’. (Hosea 13:4)

Ask: Do you agree that because **Jesus** and **Jehovah** are the **only Saviour**, then **Jesus is Jehovah**?

10. **John 5:18** - ‘**Therefore the Jews sought the more to kill him, because he . . . said also that God was his Father, MAKING HIMSELF EQUAL WITH GOD.**’

Here Jesus makes himself equal with God. Notice:

a) This is **John’s conclusion**, not only the Jews’ conclusion.

b) **Jesus did not correct them**, nor deny this as a valid conclusion.

Question: Why did John bother quoting this?

Answer: Because John also believed that **Jesus is equal with God**, and it supported the theme in John’s Gospel that Jesus is the True God.

11. **John 5:23** - ‘**That all men should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father.**

He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which hath sent him.’

To honour the **Son even as** you honour the **Father**, means to **treat both of them equally as God**.

Question: Do you give the **Son** worshipful honour **EVEN AS** (KJV) or **JUST AS** (NWT) you honour Jehovah God the Father? (No).

Ask: Do you honour men or Michael the Archangel **even as** you honour the Father? (No.)

This proves that the Son is not a mere man nor is he an angel, but is to be honoured as Jehovah God.

Ask: Do you agree that God here commands us to honour Jesus Christ as God the Father?

12. **John 6:46** ‘**Not that any man hath seen the Father**’.

This begs the question: ‘Who then did OT saints see that they declared to be God?’ Example:

The **man on the throne** in Ezekiel 1:26 is identified as the **God of Israel** in Ezekiel 10:20. This

can only be Jesus Christ who is Jehovah God the Son because ‘Not that any man hath seen the Father.’ John 6:46.

13. **John 8:24** ‘**If ye believe not that I am** (Ἐγώ εἰμι) **, ye shall die in your sins**’

Ask: You don’t want to die in your sins, do you? Then you must believe that Jesus is ‘I am’ (Ἐγώ εἰμι). Christ, by claiming to be ‘I am’ was claiming to be Jehovah God who designated Himself in this way in Exodus 3:14 and in the Greek **Septuagint** in Isaiah 43:10, ‘Be ye my witnesses . . . saith the Lord God (Jehovah) . . . that ye may know, and believe, and understand that **I am** (Ἐγώ εἰμι) he’.

Here Christ claims to be the ‘**I am**’ Jehovah God of Isaiah 43:10,11 and Exodus 3:14 (LXX, KJV)

If people don’t believe that Jesus is fully God, the ‘I am’ of Exodus 3:14, they will die in their sins without forgiveness. Belief that Jesus Christ is fully God is essential for salvation.

Hence JW’s are not saved because they do not believe that Jesus is Jehovah God ‘I am’.

14. **John 8:58** - ‘**Before Abraham was, I am.**’ (See pages 856-857)

‘Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, **Before Abraham was, I am**’.

Jesus attests to his full deity here by **claiming for Himself** the name of God that was revealed to Moses in Exodus 3:14: ‘God said unto Moses I AM THAT I AM: and he said, thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, **I AM** hath sent me unto you’.

The Watchtower wrongly translates John 8:58 as:

‘Before Abraham came into existence, **I have been**’. (NWT).

Jesus did not use the expression *EGO EN* (‘I was’ or ‘I have been’), but *EGO EIMI* (I am).

Note: At Jesus’ claim to be ‘I AM’, the Jews picked up stones to stone Jesus for blasphemy. If Jesus said what the NWT declares He said (‘I have been’) then the Jews would not have attempted to stone Him for blasphemy.

Key: The KIT in the left-hand column has ‘*ego eimi*’ translated **correctly** as ‘I am’, which contradicts the KIT right-hand column ‘I have been’.

15. **John 10:30** - ‘**I and my Father are One.** Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him.’

Watchtower teaching: What did Jesus mean when He said this to a group of Jews?

JW’s quote John 17:21,22, where Jesus prayed to the Father that the disciples

‘may all be one . . . that they may be one, even as we are one.’ JW’s say that, since the same Greek word for ‘one’ (en) is used in both passages, Jesus was not praying for His disciples to become a single entity, nor was He praying that they become a part of the Trinity.

Instead, He was praying that they have **unity of thought and purpose, just as He and the Father had**. (*Should you believe in the Trinity?* p.24).

Just as Christ and His body members are regarded as one, so are Jehovah and Christ regarded as one. They are all **one in agreement, purpose and organisation** (*Let God be True*, p 104).

Bible Teaching: The context of John 10 proves that **more is meant by ‘en’ than just unity of purpose or agreement**. How do we know this? By the way the Jews responded to Jesus’

claim by picking up stones to stone Him to death. The Jews understood that Jesus was claiming to be fully God, as v. 33 states: ‘For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, **makest thyself God**.’

Ask: (1) Why would the Jews pick up stones to kill Jesus if all He was affirming was His unity of purpose with the Father?

Ask: (2) Didn't the Jews already have unity of purpose with the Father?

Ask: (3) If Jesus was just stating His unity of purpose with the Father, then why did the Jews understand His words to claim that He was God? (v.33).

Ask: (4) If (as the WT says), the Jews were mistaken in thinking Christ to be God, why didn't Jesus correct their misunderstanding? Instead, Jesus endorsed their understanding (v.34-38), as seen by them seeking to take Him again in v.39.

The John 17:21 context is very different, as the Greek word for 'one' (en) refers to unity among people tending to be divisive over various issues. That is why Christ prayed for unity among believers.

The way the word 'one' is used in John 17:21 does not determine its meaning in John 10:30.

Ask: (5) If the oneness that Christ shares with the Father is identical to the oneness that believers have with Christ, then all believers should be able to insert their names in these verses:

- 'I (your name) and the Father are one.' (John 10:30, NWT)

- 'He who does not honour (your name) does not honour the Father who sent him.' John 5:23

- 'All things that the Father hath are Mine (your name).' (John 16:15).

Ask: (6) Are you willing to insert your name in these verses? Obviously not!

16. John 10:33 'thou being a man, makest thyself God'.

In John 10:33, John records and endorses the Jews' accusation that Jesus is **claiming to be God**: 'For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, makest thyself GOD.' v.33.

'Jesus answered them, Is it not written in your law, I said, Ye are gods?' v.34.

Watchtower Teaching: To this, JWs reply that Jesus was denying being God, claiming to be no more God than the Jews.

Bible Teaching:

v.34 'Jesus answered them, Is it not written in your law (Old Testament law in Psalm 82:1,6,7), I said, **ye are gods**? (Hebrew 'gods' = *elohim*⁴³⁰).

v.35 'If he called them (Old Testament Jewish judges or magistrates) gods unto whom the word of God came (Jewish magistrates were entrusted with judging justly).

v.36 'Say ye (Jesus' listeners) of him (Christ), whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world, 'Thou (Jesus) blasphemest'; because I said, I am the Son of God?'

v.39 Therefore they **sought again to take him** . . . ?

Jesus' words, rather than denying His deity, still left the Jews understanding that He was claiming full deity and equality with God because they still sought to arrest him for blasphemy. (v.31-33, and 39).

Explanation: Jesus in v 34 is quoting from Psalm 82:1-6 which says:

v.1 'God standeth in the congregation of the mighty; he judgeth among the **gods** (Hebrew *Elohim*⁴³⁰)

v.2 'How long will ye judge unjustly . . . ?'

v.6 I have said, **Ye are gods**⁴³⁰ and all of you are children of the most High'.

v.7 'But ye shall die like men . . .'

'Ye are gods' is said of magistrates, because of the dignity and honour of their office. It shows that the word translated 'gods' (*Elohim*) can rightly be applied to men, though rare. It applied to Moses (Exodus 7:1; 4:16) and to magistrates (Exodus 21:6; 22:8,9) because they were representing God. The meaning is:

If the Scripture applies the word 'god' to earthly magistrates, it is right to apply the term to those in office and authority. If applied to magistrates, it cannot therefore be blasphemy to use this word of Jesus Christ the Messiah who is so much more exalted and sanctified by the Father than earthly magistrates.

Note: 1) Jesus did not deny that he meant to apply the term to himself, as seen by His using the expressions 'I and my Father are one' v.30; 'Son of God v.36, and 'god' v.34.

2) Jesus did not deny that it was properly applied to himself.

3) Jesus did not deny that it implied that he was God.

Key: Jesus stated only that they were **inconsistent** in applying *Elohim* (god) to human magistrates and not allowing it also to be applied to Jesus Christ as Messiah.

Hence, Jesus said that the Jews were not authorised to charge him with blasphemy for applying 'god' to himself, because the law applied *Elohim* (gods) to human judges and because God endorsed Jesus as 'Son of God' by His miracles.

17. John 17:5 Christ and Father share the same glory, that Jehovah won't give to another.

In John 17:5 Jesus said that before the world existed, He had the **same glory** as the Father: 'And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self **with the glory which I had with thee** before the world was.' (John 17:5).

Comparing this with Isaiah 42:8 we see that Jehovah will not give his glory to another:

'I am the LORD (Jehovah): that is my name: and **my glory will I not give to another**'.

Conclusion: Because Jesus shared the same glory with the Father, and because this glory is exclusively Jehovah's and no one else's, then this proves that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God.

18. John 20:28 'Thomas answered and said unto him, "My Lord and my God"'.

Thomas addresses Jesus as 'My Lord and **my God**', thus recognizing Jesus as Jehovah God the Son. Jesus commended Thomas on his belated acknowledgement of Jesus as God.

Watchtower Teaching: JWs dismiss this verse as a simple record of Thomas' shock and surprise at seeing the risen Christ. A modern parallel might be 'Oh, my God!' Perhaps Thomas was making an emotional exclamation that was directed to Jehovah God, though spoken to Jesus. (*Should you Believe in Trinity, p.29*).

Bible Teaching:

a) If Thomas said, 'My Lord and my God' as expressing shock or surprise, then he would have been guilty of **blasphemy**, and of taking God's name in vain.

First century Jews regarded any careless use of God's name as blasphemy.

b) If Thomas had taken God's Name in vain, Jesus clearly would have **rebuked him** for it.

c) Instead, Jesus **commended** Thomas for believing that Jesus was both Lord and God. ('Thomas, because thou hast seen me thou hast believed' v.29).

If Jesus was only a man or a god, He should have corrected Thomas' wrong opinion, but Jesus reinforced Thomas' view here.

d) Thomas wasn't calling Jesus 'a god'; he was calling Jesus **his Lord and his God**. If Jesus was not Almighty God, He would have corrected Thomas by saying something like, 'No, I am just a god, a lesser god. Jehovah is the only true God. You must not put me in Jehovah's place. Only Jehovah may be called my Lord and my God.' But Jesus said no such nonsense. He commended Thomas for recognizing Him as the true God.

If Thomas said 'My Lord and my God' as an emotional exclamation of astonishment, as JWs think, then Thomas would be **talking to himself**.

But v.28 states he was talking to Jesus by using the word 'him'.

Ask:

- 1) If Thomas was just expressing surprise, wouldn't this be taking God's Name in vain?
- 2) If Thomas took God's Name in vain, don't you think Jesus would have rebuked him?
- 3) Why do you think that Jesus commended Thomas, instead of rebuking him?
- 4) What did Thomas believe in John 20:28,29? (Answer: That Jesus was Lord and God).
- e) Thomas here quotes Psalms 35:23 which is used of Jehovah:
'O LORD (Jehovah) . . . my God and my Lord.'
- f) When a Hebrew says 'my God', he means Jehovah. (*Aid to Bible Understanding*, p.133,134)
- g) The JW KIT on John 20:28 is translated as: 'The Lord of me and the God of me.'

The JW KIT (1985) calls Jesus in John 20:28 'the God (□ □ℳ □ϕ) of me', a title that JW's reserve **only for God**. (Theos preceded by the definite article 'o').

19. Acts 20:28 - 'Feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood.'
(See page 843)

20. Romans 10:9 'Ha Adon'=the True Lord (of Isaiah 1:24):

In Romans 10:9, the right-hand column of KIT says, 'if you publicly declare . that Jesus is Lord...you will be saved'. The left-hand column has *Kurios* translated as 'Lord'.

Note: The footnote lists 7 Hebrew New Testaments (J^{12, 13, 14}, J^{16, 17, 18}, J²²) which call Jesus by the title 'ha-Adon', then they state 'not Jehovah'.

Whoever wrote this footnote must have forgotten what the NWT (1961 edition appendix said under the heading 'Isaiah 1:24 - the true Lord' as follows:

'This is the translation of the Hebrew expression 'ha-Adon', this being the title 'Adon' (Lord or Master) preceded by the definite article 'ha'. Although there are many lords or masters, this prefixing of the definite article before the title Adon limited the application of the title to JEHOVAH GOD.' (Gesenius Grammar, Section 126, paragraph d, p.404,405).

In the Hebrew OT, 'ha-Adon' occurs nine times: Exodus 23:17; 34:23; Isaiah 1:24; 3:1; 10:16,33; 19:4; Micah 4:13; Malachi 3:1 'Suddenly there will come to His temple the **true Lord** whom you people are seeking'.

(This refers to Jesus coming to the temple and casting out the money changers. John 2:13-17).

Conclusion: The KIT contradicts itself by saying that Jesus is 'not Jehovah', then giving a footnote saying that He is Jehovah (ha-Adon) according to the NWT (1961 edition, p.1453).

21. I Corinthians 15:47 - 'the second man is the Lord from heaven' (KJV)

In I Corinthians 15:47, Paul states that Jesus Christ is 'the LORD from heaven', not as NWT reads 'the second man is from heaven', because:

- a) **No man** hath ascended to heaven (John 3:13), and
- b) Before Christ's conception, He was in heaven and He was **not a man**.

Watchtower Teaching: 'the second man is (OMIT) out of heaven.' (NWT)

The NWT, like other modern versions, is based on the Westcott and Hort Greek Text, which in turn is derived mostly from Codex Vaticanus, a corrupted 4th Century manuscript from Egypt, which is at variance with the Majority of NT readings.

Bible Teaching: The majority of manuscripts read 'the Lord'.

Question: Isn't it coincidental that all modern versions, based on the corrupt Egyptian readings, have one major fact in common: that they omit many Deity of Christ verses?

The KJV 'the second man is **the Lord** from heaven' is a clear proof of Christ being God, as there is only one Lord from Heaven, and He is 'Jehovah'.

What manuscript support is there for 'the Lord' in I Corinthians 15:47? See *UBS Greek NT*:

(1) **Thirteen early writers** known as **Church Fathers** quote it:

a) **Hippolytus** 170-236 AD, Vol. 5, p 167

b) **Tertullian** 200-250 AD against Marcion,
Vol. 3, page 451

Vol.3, page 529

c) **Victorinus**, Vol 7, page 342

d) **Basil** 379 AD

e) **Chrysostom** 407 AD

f) **Maximinus** 428 AD

g) **Cyril** 444 AD

h) **Euthalius** 450 AD

i) **Theodoret** 466 AD

j) **Ps-Athanasius** 550 AD

k) **Cosmas** 550 AD

l) **John Damascus** 749 AD

m) **Origen** 254 AD

(2) **Six Uncial Greek Manuscripts** contain '**the Lord**':

a) Codex Sinaiticus corrected (Aleph)

b) Codex Alexandrinus (A)

c) Codices D, K, P, ⚡.

(3) **Nineteen Minuscule Greek Manuscripts** numbered 81, 104, 181, 326, 330 436, 451, 614, 629, 1241, 1739, 1877, 1881, 1962, 1984, 1985, 2127,2492, 2495.

(4) **Byzantine lectionaries** contain the words 'the Lord'.

(5) **Ancient versions** containing 'the Lord' are:

a) Syriac Peshitta

d) Gothic

b) Syrian Harelean

e) Armenian

c) Syriac Palestinian

Conclusion: 44 ancient witnesses from all over the ancient world testify to Jesus Christ as being 'the Lord from heaven'. NWT is wrong here because no man originated from heaven.

22. I Timothy 3:16 - 'God was manifest in the flesh.' (KJV). (See page 804).

Paul states that Jesus Christ is 'God was manifest in the flesh'.

Watchtower Teaching: 'He was made manifest in the flesh' (NWT)

Bible Teaching: 'God' is the correct reading, not 'He', because

1. Of the 300 Greek manuscripts containing I Timothy 3:16, only five late cursive manuscripts (9th, 12th, 13th Century) omit 'God'. The Uncials, Aleph, A and C have been

altered so that either 'God' or 'who' can be deduced. Codex Alexandrinus 'A' (450 AD) quotes 'God'. Although the middle stroke which distinguishes 'God' from 'who' has been retouched, the fine original stroke is discernible at each end of the fuller stroke of the corrector. Wetstein, 1716, quoted in 'True or False p.33 D.O.Fuller.

2. **The following early church writers** have '**God**' (Greek: 'theos' for God):

- 1) Ignatius (90 AD) quotes 'theos' 3 times
- 2) Barnabus (90 AD)
- 3) Hippolytus (190 AD) quotes 'theos' twice
- 4) Dionysius of Alexandria (265 AD)
- 5) Gregory of Nyssa (394 AD), quotes 'theos' 22 times
- 6) Gregory of Nazianzus (390 AD) quotes 'theos' 2 times.
- 7) Dionysius of Alexandria (265 AD)
- 8) Didymus of Alexandria (398 AD)
- 9) Diodorus of Tarsus (394 AD)
- 10) Chrysostom (407 AD) quotes 'theos' 3 times
- 11) Cyril of Alexandria (444 AD) quotes 'theos' 3 times
- 12) Theodoret (466 AD) quotes 'theos' 4 times
- 13) Severus, bishop of Antioch (512 AD)
- 14) Macedonius (506 AD)
- 15) Euthalius (400 AD)
- 16) Thaumaturgus (270 AD)
- 17) Constitutiones Apostolicae (250 AD)
- 18) John Damascene (730 AD) quotes 'theos' twice
- 19) Epiphanius, Deacon of Catania (787 AD)
- 20) Several ancient scholia.

3. **Ancient versions** quoting 'God' in I Timothy 3:16 are:

- 1) Georgian version (500 AD)
- 2) Harklean version (616 AD)
- 3) Slavonic version (800 AD)

4. **All the Byzantine Lectionaries** read in assemblies of the faithful from 300 AD onwards.

5. Those few manuscripts which have 'who' (os) in the place of 'God' (theos), do not have a complete sentence without the subject 'God'.

6. A **neuter noun** 'mystery' cannot be followed by the **masculine** pronoun 'who' (os).

7. **To avoid having a clause with no subject**, the NWT arbitrarily drops the word 'who' (os), and **invents a new word 'He'** which is **not found** in any Greek manuscript.

See 'The Revision Revised', Dean Burgon, p.485-497.

Conclusion:

- 1) '**God**' (theos) in I Timothy 3:16 is witnessed by exactly 300 Greek manuscripts, by 3 ancient versions, and by 20 early church writers.
- 2) '**Who**' (os) in the place of 'theos', is quoted by only 6 manuscripts, by one version, and and certainly by no church writers.
- 3) 'o' is quoted by one Greek manuscript (D), by 5 ancient versions, & 2 late Greek writers. Hence the NWT has no manuscript support for 'He', compared with 323 major witnesses for 'God' ('theos').

Question: Whom would you choose to believe: 323 witnesses for 'God' or none for 'He'?

23. **Titus 2:13** - '**the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.**' (See page 847-849)

24. **Hebrews 1:6** - '**Let all the angels of God worship him.**'

Question: Would it be right to give the same worshipful honour to the Son, which is given to the Father (John 5:23)? (See page 846-847).

25. **Hebrews 1:8** - '**But unto the Son he saith, 'Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever''** (See page 844-845)

26. **Hebrews 1:10** - '**And Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands. . . . thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.**' (v.12)

Verse 10 is the second Old Testament passage applied to the Son, after Hebrews 1:8.

Hebrews 1:10 is quoted from Psalm 102:25,26,27 which is introduced in Psalm 102:1 as a **prayer to God** as the Creator ('Hear my prayer, O Jehovah').

In Hebrews 1:10,11,12 the writer applies Psalm 102:25-27 to Christ as Jehovah the Creator.

This proves that the Son is Jehovah, who created the heavens and the earth.

Note: In Hebrews 1, Jesus is declared to be God, because He is:

- 1) **Creator** (v 2, 10) 'by whom also he made the worlds';
- 2) The **same substance as the Father, just as the Sun's rays** (*Alpha, Beta, Gamma rays*) are the **same substance as the sun**('the brightness of the Father's glory' v.3).
- 3) The **express (exact) image** of the Father's person (v.3)
- 4) **Omnipotent** and **Omnipresent**: 'upholding all things by the word of His power' (v.3)
- 5) Father/Son relationship
- 6) **Worshipped** as God (v.6)
- 7) **Addressed** as God (v.8)
- 8) Has the same **Throne** as God (v.8)
- 9) **Unchangeable** and **Eternal** (v.12)

27. **II Peter 1:1** - '**the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.**'

(See page 849-850) 'God and our Saviour' refer to Jesus Christ by the Granville Sharp rule.

28. **Revelation 1:8 and 22:13** - '**The Alpha and Omega**'

Christ and the Father are both called '**Alpha and Omega**', '**the beginning and the end**', '**the first and the last**'.

'I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.' (Revelation 22:13) Jesus here clearly claims to be Jehovah God, because God claims the same titles to Himself in Revelation 21:6; 1:8; Isaiah 44:6 and 48:12.

'Alpha and Omega' to the Jews meant all the intermediate letters, signifying totality or entirety. Hence, when used of God (or Christ), 'Alpha and Omega' represents the eternal, Almighty God, who has always existed in the past and who will always exist in the future. For any created being to claim to be the Alpha and Omega would be sheer blasphemy.

Ask: Since Jesus in Revelation 22:13 claims to be the 'First and the last', as well as 'Alpha and Omega' - and since Jehovah God in Isaiah 44:6 says: 'I am the first, and I am the last, besides me there is no God' - what must we conclude about Jesus Christ's true identity?

Jesus Christ is God because both are called
'Alpha and Omega' and '**the beginning and the end**'

GOD	=	JESUS CHRIST	=	GOD
Revelation 21:5,6,7		Revelation 22:12-16		Revelation 1:8
'I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end'		'I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.'		'I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.'
refers to God because:		refers to Jesus Christ because:		refers to God because:
i) I will be his God (v 7)		i) Behold, I come quickly (v 12)		i) v.8 says Jehovah God
ii) He that sat upon the throne (v 5.)		ii) I Jesus (v.16)		ii) v.8 says the Almighty
		iii) I am the root and offspring of David (v.16)		
		iv) I am the bright and morning star (v.16)		
		v) <i>Watchtower</i> , Oct.1, 1978, p.15, 'Jesus.. I am coming quickly.'		
		vi) 'the First and the Last' (v.13)		
Jesus Christ is God because both are called 'the first and the last'.				
GOD	=	JESUS CHRIST	=	JESUS CHRIST
Isaiah 48:12		Isaiah 44:6		Revelation 2:8
'I am the first. I am the last'		'I am the first, and I am the last.'		Revelation 1:17,18
refers to God because: 'My own hand laid the foundation of the earth.' (v 13)		refers to Jesus Christ 'who became dead and came to life.'		refers to Jesus Christ because 'I am he that liveth and was dead'(v.18)

29. Psalm 103:19 'Jehovah hath prepared his throne in the heavens; and his kingdom ruleth over all,' and Matthew 11:25 'I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth.'

Acts 10:36 'Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all)

I Corinthians 2:8 'Had they known it they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.'

I Corinthians 12:3 'No man can say that Jesus is the Lord but by the Holy Ghost.'

I Corinthians 15:47 'the second man is the Lord from heaven'.

II Corinthians 4:5 'We preach not ourselves, but Christ Jesus the Lord'.

Philippians 2:11 'Every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord'.

Luke 2:11 'For unto you is born this day a Saviour which is Christ the Lord.'

As the Roman Caesars claimed to be God by the title 'Caesar is Lord', so Paul and early Christians stated their belief that Jesus is God by the declaration that 'Jesus is Lord'.

As the Father is Lord of all, so is Jesus Christ Lord of all. Hence Jesus Christ is fully God.

30. Jesus and Jehovah own the same throne, servants, face, name, priests, temple and light:

i) **Both occupy the same THRONE**

'flowing out from the throne (of God and of the Lamb)' (Revelation 22:1,3).

Yes, God and the Lamb occupy the **same throne**, not two thrones indicating inequality of rank or nature, but **ONE THRONE** indicating **EQUALITY of rank and nature**.

ii) **Both own the SERVANTS.** (Revelation 22:3)

'the throne (of God & of the Lamb) shall be in it; and **HIS SERVANTS** shall serve **HIM**'

Both Jehovah and Jesus are referred to as '**HIS**' and '**HIM**' (singular =one Triune God).

iii) **Both have the same FACE.**

'they shall see **HIS** face'. (Revelation 22:4) not 'their faces' but '**his** face'.

iv) **Both have the same NAME.**

'**HIS** name shall be in their foreheads' (Revelation 22:4).

God and the Lamb have the **same NAME**, not 'their names' but '**His** name'.

v) **Both own the first resurrection PRIESTS.** (Revelation 20:6)

'they shall be **priests** (of God and of Christ), and shall reign with **HIM** a thousand years'.

God and Christ are referred to as **HIM** (singular), not 'they' (not two gods).

vi) **Both God and the Lamb are the TEMPLE** of the New Jerusalem.

'for (the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb) are the **temple** of it'. (Revelation 21:22).

God and Christ are the **same TEMPLE** (singular), not temples (plural).

vii) **Both God and the Lamb are the LIGHT** of the New Jerusalem.

'for (the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the **light**) thereof.' Revelation 21:23.

God and Christ are the **same light source** (singular), not lights (plural).

31. Colossians 2:9 In him (Christ) dwells **all the fullness** (exhausts the limits) of the Godhead bodily

32. Micah 5:2 says of Christ: 'whose (Christ's) goings forth have been from of **old** (Heb: qedmah ⁶⁹²⁴=eternal), from **everlasting** (Heb: olam ⁵⁷⁶⁹=eternity)'. **Habakkuk 1:12** uses (qedmah) the same word of **Jehovah:** 'Art thou not from **everlasting** (Heb: qedmah ⁶⁹²⁴=eternal) O Jehovah my God.'

33. I John 5:20 '...in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life'.

34. Malachi 3:1 'the Lord (Heb: Ha Adon= God) shall suddenly come to his temple.' Jesus fulfilled this as God coming to His temple in John 2:13-17 and Matthew 21:12,13 "My house.."

Conclusion: JW, has it ever occurred to you that Jesus Christ just might be Jehovah the Son? And if He is, then what? When justice called for you to be cast into hell forever, mercy answered by putting Jesus of Nazareth to death in your place. If you call on Jehovah the Son, Jesus Christ, to be your Saviour now, He will save you and give you eternal life.

When the Watchtower prophecy of the world ending in 1975 failed, 2000 WT congregations disappeared worldwide and over 1 million people left the organisation.

Why don't you leave the WT and come to Jesus Christ for salvation?

II. BOTH the FATHER and the SON HAVE the SAME 119 ATTRIBUTES, CLAIMS and MAJESTY.

See page 949 for a list of 119 attributes that are true of both God the Father and God the Son.

'I am Jehovah - that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another.' (Isaiah 62:8).

The glory of these 119 attributes are jointly owned by the Father and the Son, and nobody else. Jesus Christ is Jehovah God, equally with the Father, because both the Father and Son alone have the following attributes:

- both are to be **honoured equally** (John 5:23)
- both are the **I AM** (Exodus 3:14-15; John 8:24,58)
- both are the **Mighty God** (Isaiah 10:20,21; Jer 32:18; Psalm 50:1; Isaiah 9:6; Gen 49:24)
- both own the **same throne** (Psalm 45:6,7; Hebrews 1:8; Revelation 22:1,3)
- both accept **worship** (Exodus 34:14; I Chronicles 16:29; Hebrews 1:6; Matthew 28:9)
- both **laid the foundation of the earth** (Psalm 102:24-27; Isaiah 48:13; Hebrews 1:10-12)
- One God has **created mankind** (Mal. 2:10; Prov. 16:4; Isaiah 44:24; Col 1:16; John 1:3)
- both are the **Shepherd** (Psalm 80:1; Gen 49:24; John 10:11; Hebrews 13:20; I Peter 5:4)
- both are from **Everlasting** (Psalm 90:2; Habakkuk 1:12; Micah 5:2; Hebrews 7:3).
- both are the **First and Last** (Isaiah 44:6; Revelation 1:17,18; Rev. 2:8; See p.54.)
- both are the **Alpha and Omega** (Revelation 1:8; 21:5-7; 22:13-16; See p.54)
- both come and **Reward** (Isaiah 40:10; 62:11; Revelation 22:12)
- both are **unchangeable** (Malachi 3:6; Hebrews 13:8)
- both have **unsearchable riches** (Romans 11:33; Ephesians 3:8)

15. both are the **Holy One** (Isaiah 43:15; Acts 3:14)
16. both are **omnipotent** and **fill all things** (Psalm 139:7; Jer. 23:24; Eph. 4:10; John 3:13)
17. both are **omniscient** (Psalm 147:5; Prov. 14:3; John 21:17; John 16:30; Colossians 2:3)
18. both are **omnipotent** (Genesis 17:1; Matthew 28:18; Hebrews 1:3)
19. both are **eternal** (Deuteronomy 33:27; Hebrews 7:3; Micah 5:2)
20. both own the **everlasting Kingdom** (Psalm 145:13; Daniel 7:14; II Peter 1:11)
21. both are **Lord of all** (Psalm 103:19; Matthew 11:25; Acts 10:36)
22. both are the **only Saviour** (Isaiah 43:11; Titus 1:3,4; Philippians 3:20; II Peter 1:1; 3:18;
Luke 2:11; Hebrews 5:9; Acts 4:12)
23. both are the **Truth** (Deuteronomy 32:4; John 14:6)
24. both are **sinless** (Deuteronomy 32:4; Hebrews 4:15)
25. both are **in the beginning** (Genesis 1:1; John 1:1)
26. both God and the Son are **the Judge** (Psalm 82:8; John 5:22), but the **Father is not** the
Judge (John 5:22 'The Father judgeth no man').
27. both are **our Hope** (Psalm 39:7; I Timothy 1:1)
28. both **shelter believers under their wings** (Psalm 91:2,4; Matthew 23:37)
29. both are **our Redeemer** (Psalm 130:7,8; Isaiah 44:6; Galatians 3:13; Titus 2:14)
30. the **glory** of both was **seen by Isaiah** (Isaiah 6:3,5; John 12:41)
31. both are **the Rock** (Deuteronomy 32:3,4,18; Psalm 18:31; I Corinthians 10:4)
32. both are to be **looked to** for salvation (Isaiah 45:22; John 1:29; John 6:40)
33. to both shall **every knee bow** and **every tongue confess** (Isaiah 45:23; Philippians 2:10;
Romans 14:10,11)
34. the **enemies** of both **shall perish** (Psalm 92:9; Philippians 3:18,19)
35. both **send the Holy Spirit** (Joel 2:28; John 16:7)
36. to both shall **all men come** (Psalm 65:2; Isaiah 45:24; John 12:32)
37. both **forgive sins** (Exodus 34:7; Mark 2:5,7; Colossians 3:13)
38. both **blot out sin** (Isaiah 43:25; Hebrews 1:3; I John 1:7)
39. both **still storms** (Psalm 107:29; Matthew 8:26)
40. both **own the Holy Spirit** (Matthew 10:20; Romans 8:9)
41. both **seek the lost** (Ezekiel 34:16; Luke 19:10)
42. to both are **applied 10 aspects of the Lord's Prayer** (Matthew 6:9-13; see page 954)
43. both **receive believers to glory** (Psalm 73:24; John 14:3)
44. both are our **One Master** (Malachi 1:6; Matthew 23:8,10)
45. both are **served by believers** (Deuteronomy 10:20; Colossians 3:24)
46. both **lead believers to living waters** (Psalm 23:2; Revelation 7:17)
47. both **correct believers** (Proverbs 3:12; Revelation 3:19)
48. both **prepare a place for believers** in heaven (Hebrews 11:16; John 14:2)
49. both are **all in all** (I Corinthians 15:28; Colossians 3:11)
50. both are **known** by believers (Galatians 4:9; Philippians 3:10; John 17:3)
51. both are **cleaved to** by believers (Deuteronomy 10:20; John 15:4)
52. both are the **light of the world** (Psalm 27:1; John 8:12)
53. both are the **Light** of the New Jerusalem (Isaiah 60:19,20; Revelation 21:23)
54. both **give eternal life** (Psalm 36:9; John 10:28)
55. both are called '**My Lord and my God**' (Psalm 35:22,23; John 20:28)
56. both are **our Righteousness** (Isaiah 45:24; I Corinthians 1:30; Jeremiah 23:5,6)
57. both have the **same voice as of many waters** (Ezekiel 43:2; Revelation 1:15)

58. both are **witnessed to by believers** (Isaiah 43:10; Acts 1:8)
59. both **own the peace given to believers** (Philippians 4:7; John 14:27)
60. both **own the gospel** (I Thessalonians 2:2; Romans 1:16)
61. both **give saving grace** (Titus 2:11; Acts 15:11)
62. both are **our peace** (Judges 6:24; Ephesians 2:14)
63. both are **pierced and looked upon** (Zechariah 12:10; John 19:37)
64. both **sanctify believers** (Exodus 31:13; I Corinthians 6:11)
65. both **give victory** to believers (Psalm 98:1; I Corinthians 15:57)
66. both **heal people** (Exodus 15:26; Matthew 9:35)
67. both equally **own the churches** (I Corinthians 15:9; Romans 16:16; I and II Thess. 1:1)
68. both own the Kingdom (Matthew 6:33; Rev. 11:15).
69. both are **glorified by the Gentiles** (Isaiah 24:15; II Thessalonians 1:12; Matthew 12:21)
70. both own the **Day of the Lord** (Isaiah 13:6; Philippians 1:6; II Thessalonians 2:2)
71. both **give grace to believers** (Romans 5:15; Colossians 1:6; II Cor. 8:9; Galatians 6:18)
72. both **own the same glory** (Romans 5:2; II Corinthians 8:23)
73. both own the **same love** (John 5:42; II Corinthians 5:14)
74. both own the **same Word** (Psalm 119:11; I Thessalonians 2:13; Colossians 3:16)
75. both own **salvation** (Luke 3:6; Jonah 2:9; Acts 4:12; II Timothy 2:10)
76. both were **served equally by Paul** (Titus 1:1; Romans 1:1); and by James (James 1:1)
77. both own the **commandments** (I John 5:3; John 14:15)
78. both had their **way prepared** by John the Baptist (Isaiah 40:3; Mark 1:1-3)
79. both **search all hearts** (Psalm 139:1; Revelation 2:23)
80. both **own the same flock** (I Peter 5:2; John 21:15,16)
81. both **ascend on high, lead captivity captive, and give gifts to men** (Psalm 68:17,18;
Ephesians 4:7-10)
82. both are **like a Bridegroom** (Isaiah 62:5; Mark 2:19,20)
83. both **receive the glory of God alone** forever and ever (Isaiah 42:8; Galatians 1:4,5;
I Peter 5:10,11; II Peter 3:18; Hebrews 13:21; I Peter 4:11; Revelation 1:5,6)
84. both are the **source of fruit** (Hosea 14:8; John 15:5)
85. both are our **source of strength** (Psalm 119:28; Philippians 4:13)
86. both **give rest for our souls** (Jeremiah 6:16; Matthew 11:29)
87. both **shall appear at Christ's return** (Psalm 102:16; Zechariah 14:3,4,5; Titus 2:13)
88. both **will come to earth** (Isaiah 40:10; Revelation 22:7,12,20)
89. both are to be **trusted in** (Jeremiah 17:7; Ephesians 1:12; John 14:1)
90. both are **our King** (Isaiah 6:5; 33:22; Revelation 17:14; 19:16; I Timothy 6:14,15)
91. both will **wound their enemies' heads** (Psalm 68:21; 110:6)
92. both take **vengeance** (Romans 12:19; II Thessalonians 1:7,8)
93. both will be **opposed by the Antichrist's armies** (Isaiah 34:22; Revelation 19:19)
94. both will **fight against the Antichrist's armies** at Armageddon (Zechariah 14:3;
Revelation 19:11,13,21)
95. both will **destroy death** (Isaiah 25:8; II Timothy 1:10).
96. both **receive the faith of believers** (I Thessalonians 1:8; Galatians 3:26)
97. both are **our life** (Deuteronomy 30:20; Colossians 3:4)
98. both are **to be prayed to** (Matthew 6:9; Acts 7:59)
99. both **raised up Christ** (Acts 2:32; John 2:19,21)
100. both **own all of the other** (John 16:15)

- 101.both **enter the east gate of Jerusalem** (Ezekiel 44:1,2; Luke 19:37-45)
- 102.the **man on the throne** in Ezekiel 1:26 is identified as the **God of Israel** in Ezek 10:20
- 103.both names are placed on the **same level in the baptism formula** (Matthew 28:19)
- 104.both **fellowship equally with believers** (I John 1:3).
- 105.both **comfort believers** (Isaiah 66:13; Philippians 2:1).
- 106.both **receive doxologies of worship in heaven** (Revelation 5:8-10; 5:11,12; 5:13,14).
- 107.both **jointly send grace and peace** to the churches (Romans 1:7).
- 108.both the **love of the Father** and **love of the Son** are an equal privilege given to us.(John 14:21)
- 109.both jointly **declare themselves to be Jehovah**, “I am the first,& I am the last”(Isaiah 44:6)
- 110.both **come to his temple**, ‘the Lord shall suddenly come to his temple.’(Malachi 3:1; Mat 21:13)
- 111.both are the **King of Israel** (Isaiah 44:6; John 1:49).
- 112.both can be **blasphemed** (**God**-Rom.2:24; **HS**-Luke 12:10; **Christ**-Luke 22:65; **Acts** 13:45; 18:5,6; 26:9,11)
- 113.both are **always with all believers** (Matthew 28:20; 2 Corinthians 13:14).
- 114.both are the **one lawgiver** (God-Rom.7:22; Christ-Gal.6:2; HS-Rom.8:2; James 4:12).
- 115.both have the **same face** (Revelation 22:3,4)
- 116.both have the **same Name** (Revelation 22:3,4)
- 117.both own the **same servants** (Revelation 22:3)
- 118.both are the **Temple** of the New Jerusalem (Revelation 21:22)
- 119.**Heavens are the work of thy hands** (Psalm 102:24-27; Hebrews 1:10-12)

Since both Jesus and the Father have these same attributes, both are Jehovah God.

There are not 2 Gods, but One God in 3 persons. One who has these attributes must be God. **The Lord’s Prayer** is devoted to worshipping the Father. Jesus conceals His personal glory in this prayer as seen by other Scriptures which are just as true of Christ as the Lord’s Prayer is of the Father. Notice the Scriptures, said of Christ, that prove we could address the Lord’s Prayer to the Son on page 954).

III. APPEARANCE OF JEHOVAH THE SON TO OLD TESTAMENT SAINTS WHO WORSHIPPED HIM.

The One who appears in the form of an angel or man, is, in the immediate context, declared to be God, or Jehovah. Who was this Being? He was not the Father, because no man has seen Him at any time, or can see Him and live (Exodus 33:20; John 6:46; 1:18).

He who appeared was Jehovah God the Son, the Word, as seen in these examples.

Jesus Christ was worshipped on 17 NT occasions, yet we never find Him refusing worship.

Notice these pre-incarnate appearances of God the Son being seen and accepting worship.

- i) It was **God the Son** whom **Ezekiel** saw and worshipped as a **man sitting on the throne** (Ezekiel 1:26) who was later identified as the **God of Israel** (Ezekiel 10:20). ‘Upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a **man** above upon it.’ (Ezek 1:26,28)
- ii) It was **God the Son** with whom **Jacob** wrestled: ‘I have **seen God** face to face’ Gen 32:28,30;
- iii) It was **God the Son** whom **Joshua** worshipped. This worship was accepted by this person known as the **Captain of the host of the Lord (Jehovah)**. (He ‘did worship’ Joshua 5:14). He was worshipped, the ground was holy (Exodus 3:4,5),and He was Captain of the host.
- iv) It was **God the Son** whom **Moses** worshipped, as the Angel of Jehovah at the bush. ‘The **angel of the Lord** appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the **midst of a bush**’. (Exodus 3:2). ‘**God** called unto him out of the **midst of the bush**’. (Exodus 3:4).

- v) It was **God the Son** whom **Manoah** (father of Samson) saw, saying, ‘We shall surely die, because we have seen **God**.’ (Judges 13:22)
- vi) The **elders** saw the **God of Israel**. (Exodus 24:9,10,11). This was **God the Son**.
- vii) **Isaiah** cried, ‘Woe is me! for I am undone . . . for **mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord (Jehovah) of hosts**.’ (Isaiah 6:5). In John 12:41, John says this was **God the Son**: ‘These things said Esaias, when he saw his (Christ’s) glory, and spake of him.’
- viii) It was **God the Son** who spoke to **Hagar** (Genesis 16:7-14) ‘**Jehovah** that spake unto her’ 13.
- ix) ‘**Jehovah** went before them’ in Exodus 13:21 is said to be ‘the **angel of God** which went before’ (Exodus 14:19),& **led Israel** in a pillar of cloud by day, and a pillar of fire by night.

IV. NEW TESTAMENT EXAMPLES OF PRAYER TO CHRIST:

The Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT) teaches prayer to Jesus.

The Watchtower teaches that prayer should be addressed **only to Jehovah God**.

‘Prayer should be directed only to the Creator, Jehovah’ (*The Truth That Leads to Eternal Life*, 1968, p 152).

Consider these prayers directed to Jesus:

i) **STEPHEN** at his martyrdom, **prayed to Jesus saying**: ‘**Lord Jesus, receive my spirit**.’ (Acts 7:59). Stephen worshipped Christ with his dying breath as very and eternal God.

Ask: Isn’t this prayer to Jesus?

ii) The **KIT** tells us to **pray to Jesus**:

‘if ever anything you should **ask me** in the name of me this I shall do’ (John 14:14, **KIT**, p483).

Here **Jesus** invites us to beseech **HIM** in **prayer**, and in the authority of His own name.

If a JW should ever pray aloud to Jesus in a Kingdom Hall, he’d be disfellowshipped.

iii) When **SAUL** was blinded on the way to Damascus, he **prayed to Jesus**:

‘Who art thou **LORD**? and the Lord said: I AM **JESUS** . . .’ (Acts 9:5)

‘and he trembling and astonished said, **Lord** what would thou have me to do?’ (Acts 9:6)

iv) **ANANIAS** **prayed to Jesus** before he met Saul: (v 11).

‘The Lord said unto him (Ananias), Arise, and go into the street which is called Straight, and enquire in the house of Judas for one called Saul of Tarsus, for behold he prayeth, and hath seen in a vision a man named Ananias coming in, and putting his hand on him, that he might receive his sight’ (v 12, 13). ‘Then **Ananias answered, Lord, I have heard by many of this man, how much evil he hath done to thy saints at Jerusalem**’.

(**Note**: Here Ananias prays (v.13) to the Lord, who is identified in v.17 as **JESUS**:

‘The Lord, even **Jesus**, that **appeared unto thee in the way** as thou camest, **hath sent me**, that thou mightest receive thy sight’.) Hence, both Saul and Ananias pray to Jesus.

v) **All the Christians at DAMASCUS** called on **Jesus name** according to Ananias.

‘He hath authority from the chief priests to bind all that **CALL** on **thy name**’. (v.14).

Ananias is still talking to Jesus in prayer, and states that the Christians are being persecuted by the Chief Priests for **calling on Jesus’ name**. The chief priests would not be worried by them calling on the Father’s name, but **calling on Jesus’ name made the priests angry**.

vi) **JESUS** rebukes the Jews: ‘Ye will not **come to me**, that ye might have life.’ (John 5:40) How were they to come to Christ, but by **prayer to Him, asking Christ for Life** (John 4:10)?

vii) ‘**ALL** that in every place **call** upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord.’ (I Corinthian 1:2). Are not all true believers praying to and worshipping Christ by calling upon His name?

Yes! Do we pray to angels or men? No! We only pray to God. Christ, as the omniscient God, hears and understands millions of prayers a second all over the world.

viii) We are to **trust in Christ**, as we trust in God. 'Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me.' (John 14:1). Trusting Christ is prayer to Christ.

ix) 'At the **name** of Jesus every **knee** should bow . . . that **every tongue** should **confess** that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.' (Philippians 2:10,11).

Ask: Would it be right for all creatures in the universe to bow, adore and exalt a fellow creature? How could bowing to a creature glorify God the Father? Hence Christ cannot be a creature, but is God the Son.

x) Is it worship of the Father when Peter concludes his prayer to God in I Peter 5:10,11 with: the **Doxology to the Father** 'To him be glory and dominion for ever and ever, Amen?.'

Yes, this is adoration and worship to God. Let us be consistent.

This same Doxology is given to the Son in:

II Peter 3:18 'But grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour **Jesus Christ**. To him be **glory both now and for ever**. Amen.'

-I Peter 4:11 'that God in all things may be glorified through **Jesus Christ**, to whom be **praise and dominion for ever and ever**. Amen.'

-II Timothy 4:18 'The **Lord** shall deliver me from every evil work, and will preserve me unto his heavenly kingdom, to whom be **glory for ever and ever**. Amen.'

-Revelation 1:5,6 'Unto **him that loved us**, and washed us from our sins in his own blood. And hath made us kings and priests unto God and His Father; to him be **glory and dominion for ever and ever**. Amen'

A T Robertson in 'Word Pictures in the NT' Vol 6, p.126 confirms that these refer to Christ, especially I Peter 4:11 as follows:

4 out of 17 Doxologies are to Christ. The same words are spoken to the Father as to the Son.

xi) In Revelation 5:8-14, first the **redeemed** fall down and **adore the Lamb only** (v.8-10).

Secondly, unlimited **angels adore the Lamb only** (v. 11,12).

Thirdly, **all creatures** in the universe **adore the Father and the Lamb**. (v.13,14).

xii) God and the Lamb have **one Throne, one Face, one Name** and we are **servants of both**. 'proceeding out of the **throne** (of God and of the Lamb)'. (v.1)

'the **throne** (of God and of the Lamb) shall be in it; **his servants** shall serve him.(v.3).

And they shall see **his face**; and **his name** shall be in their foreheads.' (Revelation 22:1,3,4)

The word 'his' (singular) applied to 'God and the Lamb' indicates that both God and the Lamb own the servants, have the same face, have the same name, and own the same throne. Hence, we see the one and equal supremacy and unity of the Father and the Son.

V. **FATHER AND SON HAVE THE SAME DIVINE OFFICES**

- i) The Son's name is placed on the same level as the name of the Father in Matthew 28:19: '**Baptising** them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit' Would God allow a created being's name to be put on the same level as the Father? Never!
- ii) The **love** of the Father and of the Son is shown as an equal privilege given to us. 'He that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him.' (John 14:21)
- iii) Believers **fellowship equally** with both the Father and the Son. 'Truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.' (I John 1:3)
- iv) Eternal life is for believers to **know equally both the Father and the Son**. 'This is life eternal, that they may know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ'. (John 17:3).
- v) Paul and James are **servants of both God and Christ**:
'Paul, a servant of God, and an apostle of Jesus Christ' (Titus 1:1)
'James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ.' (James 1:1)
'Paul, an apostle . . . by Jesus Christ, and God the Father.' (Galatians 1:1)
- vi) The Father and Son **both equally own the church**:
'The church . . . in God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ.' (I Thess.1:1; II Thess 1:1)
- vii) The Father and Son **both equally bestow grace and peace**. 'Grace be unto you, and peace from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ.' (II Thessalonians 1:2)
- viii) The Father and the Son **both love us, console us, and give us hope**. (II Thessalonians 2:16). Both are co-equal in their power to grant our petitions.

14. **CHRIST'S BODILY RESURRECTION** 'I have power to take it again' In 10:18

Watchtower Teaching: 'Jesus was raised to life as an invisible spirit. He did not take up again that body in which he had been killed . . .' '*Let your Name be sanctified.*' (p.266).

The Watchtower teaches that Jesus' body was disposed of by God.

The NWT **mistranslates** I Peter 3:18 as 'being put to death in the flesh, but made alive **in** the spirit' to teach merely a spiritual resurrection of Christ.

Bible Teaching: I Peter 3:18 refers to when Christ died. His Spirit went and preached to spirits in prison (v. 19,20). After three days, Christ's physical body was raised.

I Peter 3:18 (KJV) **correctly** reads: 'being put to death in the flesh, but quickened **by** the Spirit.' Which Scriptures best teach Christ's bodily resurrection?

1. 'They were terrified and affrighted, and **supposed that they had seen a spirit.**' (v.37) He said unto them, 'Behold my hands and my feet, that it is **I myself**: handle me and see; for a **spirit** hath not **flesh and bones**, as ye see **me** have.' (**Luke 24:37, 39**)

Notice that the resurrected Christ says here that:

- (1) He is **not a spirit**;
- (2) His resurrection body **has flesh and bones**;
- (3) His **physical hands** and **feet** are proof of His physical resurrection;

Jesus is trying to convince them that He, ‘I myself’ has a permanent physical body which still had the nail scars in His hands and feet. This is opposite to the WT teaching that Christ’s body was disposed of and that He became only a spirit. If the WT claim was correct, then Jesus would be deceiving the disciples here in showing them His body.

2. ‘Then saith he to Thomas, . . . reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless, but believing.’ (John 20:27)

Here Jesus says that He has a physical side that He challenges Thomas to touch.

3. ‘Neither did his flesh see corruption.’ - Acts 2:30,31

NWT	KJV
‘he would seat one from the fruitage of his loins OMIT upon his throne, he saw beforehand and spoke concerning the resurrection of the Christ, that neither was he forsaken in Hades, nor did his flesh see corruption. ’	‘of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne; He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption. ’

Notice the following:

a) God promised David that ‘according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ’ to sit on his throne.’ (v.30). This is a bodily resurrection of Christ, not spiritual. The NWT omits this because of its corrupt Westcott-Hort Greek text. Well over 38 manuscripts have it.

b) ‘neither did his flesh see corruption’ (v.31) means that Christ’s body did not decay. Why? Because Jesus was raised from the dead in a material, fleshly body.

4. ‘I will raise it up . . . he spake of the temple of his body.’ - John 2:19-21

‘Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up (v.19). But he spake of the temple of his body.’ (v.21)

Jesus here promised that **He Himself** would raise up His own body after three days.

Notice how Jesus uses the word ‘body’ meaning a bodily resurrection, not a spiritual resurrection.

Ask: How does Jesus define ‘the temple’ in John 2:19-21? Since Jesus said that He would raise His body, doesn’t this mean a bodily resurrection would occur?

5. Christ promises to eat of the fruit of the vine in the Kingdom. Only a body can eat.

‘I will not drink of the fruit of the vine, until the Kingdom of God shall come.’ (Luke 22:18)

Jesus here showed that his resurrected body would be able to eat and drink even in the Kingdom of God. Notice that a non-material spirit cannot eat and drink. Jesus promised the disciples in Luke 22:30 ‘that ye may eat and drink at my table in my Kingdom.’

Ask: If Jesus expected to become an immaterial spirit, why would He promise the disciples that they would eat and drink with Christ at His table in His Kingdom?

6. Christ ate a broiled fish and a honeycomb in front of them. Luke 24:41,42.

7. ‘he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies’. Rom. 8:11
 As Christ’s body was raised physically from the dead, so shall our mortal bodies be raised.

8. His resurrection body could ‘breathe on them’ (John 20:22). A spirit cannot breathe, can it?

9. ‘His feet shall stand in that day upon the Mount of Olives.’ Zechariah 14:4

A spirit does not have feet. Only a physical body has feet as Jesus has at His second coming.

10. ‘One shall say unto him, What are these wounds in thine hands?’ Zechariah 13:6

Ask: How can a non-material spirit have wounds in his hands which can be observed?

11. The resurrected, glorified Christ touched John, laying his right hand on him. Rev. 1:17

Watchtower Objection: JWs quote I Corinthians 15:44,50 to support their claim that Jesus was raised from the dead as a spirit creature:

a) ‘It is sown a natural body; it is raised a **spiritual body**. There is a natural body, and there is a **spiritual body**.’ (v.44)

b) ‘**flesh and blood** cannot inherit the Kingdom of God.’ (v.50). JWs claim that Jesus must have had a spiritual resurrection, because flesh-and-blood bodies cannot exist in heaven. They claim that mortality and corruption belong to the fleshly body.

Bible Teaching:

a) The Greek word for body, ‘soma’ (4983), always means a material body, an organised whole made up of parts, when used of a person (Zodhiates, NT Word Study, p.1358). The spiritual body in I Cor. 15:44 is not an immaterial body, but a supernatural, spirit-dominated body. It is a body directed by the spirit, as opposed to a body under the dominion of the flesh.

There are no exceptions to Paul using ‘soma’ for a material body.

Paul even refers to a **believer** as a ‘spiritual man who judges all things’ (I Cor. 2:15), yet Paul did not mean an immaterial invisible man with no physical body.

He meant a spirit-controlled man with a flesh and blood body.

Ask: In I Corinthians 2:15 (‘He that is spiritual judgeth all things’), is Paul discussing an invisible spirit creature or a material, flesh-and-blood human? Can you see that being ‘spiritual’ does not demand a non-material body? The same is true in I Corinthians 15:44.

b) **Key:** In v.50 ‘flesh and blood’ is an idiom meaning that mortal, perishable, earth-bound humans, as we are now, cannot have a place in God’s glorious, heavenly Kingdom.

c) ‘this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.’ v.53
 Nothing is taken away from us (materialness). Instead immortality is ‘put on’ or **added** to us.

Ask: Don’t the words ‘put on’ mean **adding** something to humanity (that is immortality), not taking away something from humanity (our material body)?

Conclusion: Since Christ’s resurrected body could **eat, drink, breathe** (John 20:22), **show His hands and feet with scars** (Luke 24:40), be **touched**, and have **flesh and bones** (Luke 24:39), it is certain that this body was a material body. This is especially true since Jesus corrected the disciples’ misconception that they had seen a spirit (Luke 24:37).

For the JWs to say that a body is not a body, is their last resort of redefining common words.

15. IS SALVATION BY CHRIST or by WATCHTOWER WORKS?

The difference between salvation by faith and works is that, with faith, God does it, but with works, we try to do it ourselves. JWs often give ‘lip service’ to salvation by grace through faith in Christ. In reality, they believe in works for the Watchtower for salvation. They urge readers to ‘come to Jehovah’s organisation for salvation.’ (WT, 15 Nov. 1981, p.21).

Watchtower magazine of 15 Aug 1972, p.491 asks JWs to ‘work hard for the reward of eternal life.’ Eternal life is a gift (Romans 6:23), never a reward to be earned.

JWs cannot know for sure if they have salvation during this life.

The WT tells JWs that if they fail to serve God ‘properly’ in the millennium, they will be annihilated.

They believe that eternal life becomes theirs, only by serving God till the end of the 1000 years. JWs believe that Jesus’ death only wiped out the sin inherited from Adam.

They claim that Christ’s atonement allows men to work their way to salvation.

They claim that the ‘gift’ of Christ’s ransom sacrifice is free to all, only to give us a chance to work for our salvation.

JWs claim that being born again is only for the 144,000 anointed class.

JWs claim the 'other sheep' don't need to be born again, but hope to live forever on paradise earth.

JWs falsely claim six steps to being born again:

- i) Take in accurate knowledge of God. This is a mistranslation of John 17:3 where they change 'that they may **know (verb)** thee (KJV)' to 'their taking in **knowledge (noun)** of you'. The unbeliever may have knowledge about God, but only the saved person knows God personally. Jesus will say to unbelievers 'I never knew you: depart from me.' Matt 7:23
- ii) Exercise faith, which they define as **belief plus works**. (See Eph.2:9 'not of works lest.')
- iii) Repentance from bad works.
- iv) Conversion, which they define as doing works fitting repentance.
- v) Dedication to Jehovah, which they define as dedication to the Watchtower Organisation.
- vi) Baptism, as an outward sign of their dedication (*Watchtower*, Feb 1, 1982, p.25-29)

For a JW, the above does not ever guarantee them to be born again; it just puts them in line. They think that only 144,000 are born again. Since the 144,000 places were supposedly filled in 1935, most JWs believe they can never be born again.

JWs believe that three classes of people will be saved by good works:

- a) The 144,000 to heaven;
- b) The 'other sheep' to earth; and
- c) Non-JWs who have lived good enough lives to earn salvation.

The Pharisees (like the JWs) believed in study and obedience to the Law, but Jesus said that was not enough. They had to come to Jesus as the giver of eternal life. Only by the indwelling Christ can believers do good works. JWs live in fear of dying at Armageddon.

JWs twist five main Scriptures regarding salvation:

1. John 3:3,5,7 - Being Born again

'Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, Verily I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the Kingdom of God. Ye must be born again.' (John 3:3,7)

Watchtower Teaching: JWs do not believe that they must be born again. If you ask a JW if he has been born again, he will say: 'That doesn't apply to me. It's only for the 144,000 anointed ones. I belong to the "great crowd" who will live on the earth under Kingdom rule.' The WT organisation has taught them that: 'The 'other sheep' do not need any such rebirth, for their goal is life everlasting in the restored earthly paradise.' (WT, 15 Feb 1986, p.14).

Our Biblical Response:

Question 1: When Jesus said, 'Unless **anyone** is born again, he cannot see the Kingdom of God.' (John 3:3 NWT), did He allow for any exceptions? (No!).

Question 2: In I John 5:1 (NWT) '**Everyone believing** that Jesus is the Christ has been born from God', does the expression 'everyone believing' leave any believer out? (No)

Question 3: In Galatians 4:5,6 (NWT) didn't Christ come so 'that we . . . might receive the **adoption** as sons. Now because you are sons, God has sent forth the **Spirit** of his Son into our hearts, and it cries out "Abba, Father"?'?

Ask: Have you been adopted as a son of God, by receiving the Spirit of Christ into your heart, as shown here? (No)

Question 4: In Romans 8:9 'Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.' Remind the JW that he has admitted that he has not received Christ's Spirit to dwell in his heart by being born again.

Ask: In the light of Romans 8:8,9 can you reach any other conclusion than that you **cannot please God** (v.8) and that **you do not belong to Christ?** Re-read Romans 8:8,9,14-16.

Bible Teaching:

Scripture is clear that the opportunity to become born again is not limited to 144,000 people in the so-called anointed class, but is **open to all who believe in Jesus Christ as follows.**

a) **I John 5:1** - 'Whosoever (everyone) believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.'

There are no exceptions. Anybody and everybody who believes that Jesus is the Christ is born again.

b) **John 3:16** 'that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.'

c) **I John 4:7** - 'everyone that loveth is born of God.'

Key: Notice here that God never mentions that the number to be born again is restricted to 144,000 but is unlimited to 'whosoever believeth'.

Note: Jesus did not need to be born again because He never sinned (Hebrews 5:15).

Only sinners being dead spiritually need to be born again.

'Ye' in John 3:7 means '**everybody**' plural. Being born again of the Spirit means that we who were born physically with a dead spirit inherited from Adam, experience a spiritual rebirth by the Holy Spirit giving us new spiritual life. Everyone must be born again.

Paul did not divide believers into two classes, but said:

a) 'Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness which the Lord, the righteous judge shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto **ALL** them also that love his appearing.' (II Timothy 4:8)

b) The new birth is not limited to 144,000, but is available to 'any man': 'If **any man** be in Christ, he is a new creature . . .' (II Corinthians 5:17)

c) Never do we read of a limited number being placed on those who are born again.

'Being born again, not of corruptible seed but of incorruptible, by the word of God.' I Peter 1:23 '**everyone** that doeth righteousness is born of him.' (I John 2:29)

'**whosoever** believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God ...' (I John 5:1)

Question: What about you? Have you been born again? You **must** be born again!

2. Present tense salvation: Matthew 24:13 'But he that shall endure unto the end (of the 7 year Tribulation), the same shall be saved (from the Antichrist's persecutions).'

The Watchtower Society has convinced JWs that they are unsaved and that they cannot be saved in this present life. They do not believe that they will have to answer for their sins. The JW book '*Make Sure of all Things*' on page 332 states: 'Salvation to **life** involves time and is not completed when one becomes a Christian.' They believe that nobody can be sure of salvation until they have continued their good works up to the end of the 1000 years. Their idea is completely false as seen from these scriptures, showing that we **now possess a**

present tense salvation:

- 1) I John 5:12 'He that has the Son, **has life.**'
- 2) I John 5:13 'that ye may **know** that ye have eternal **life**'.
- 3) John 3:36 'He that believeth on the Son **has everlasting life.**'
- 4) I John 3:2 'Beloved, **now are we** the sons of God . . .'
- 5) I Corinthians 1:18 'but unto **us** which **are saved** . . .'
- 6) II Corinthians 2:15 'in them that **are saved** . . .'
- 7) Ephesians 2:5,8 'by grace **ye are saved;**'

- 8) I Thessalonians 1:10 ‘Jesus, which **delivered us** from the wrath to come.’
 9) II Timothy 1:9 ‘Who **has saved us** . . .’
 10) Titus 3:5 ‘according to his mercy he **saved us**.’
 11) I John 2:12 ‘I write unto you because your sins **are forgiven you** for his name’s sake.’
 12) Romans 8:16 ‘The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit that **we are** the children of God.’
Think: If all the people converted in the apostles’ time up to 100 AD were totalled, they would have taken up the 144,000 places even before the JW’s came on the scene!

3. Romans 10:13 - ‘Calling on Jehovah’

NWT	KJV
‘Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will be saved.’	‘For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord (Greek: ← ↑ → ↓) shall be saved.’

JW’s quote this verse to claim that the proper use of God’s correct name - ‘Jehovah’ - is essential to obtaining salvation. They explain this as: ‘Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will **get away safe**.’ (*Man’s Salvation out of World Distress* p.111), meaning get away safe at Armageddon. This is completely **redefining salvation** from being ‘salvation from **sin**’ to ‘salvation from **Armageddon**’.

Bible Teaching: JW’s have inserted the word ‘Jehovah’ which is not in any NT manuscript.

Question: Why didn’t they translate ‘**Lord**’ in Philippians 2:11 as ‘Jehovah’?

Answer: Because it would prove that ‘Jesus Christ is Jehovah’.

Paul is here quoting Joel 2:32: ‘calling on the name of Jehovah’, and applying it to Christ. Paul is here equating ‘calling on Jehovah’ with ‘calling upon Jesus Christ’, hence proving that Christ is Jehovah. The context of Romans 10:4-14 is Jesus Christ, where Jesus’ name is mentioned in v.4,6,7,9,11,12.

Ask: Why isolate v.13 as referring to Jehovah, when every other verse here refers to Jesus Christ? Is not Jesus Christ shown to be Jehovah here ?

Also, for Peter, Jesus is the Lord of Joel 2:32 in Acts 2:21.

This proves that Jesus is the Jehovah of Joel 2:32.

The Watchtower magazine (1 May 1978, p.12), says that Romans 10:13 refers to **Jesus Christ**.

However, the WT magazine (1 Feb 1980, p.61) states that it refers to **Jehovah**.

Ask: How can the Watchtower **reverse its interpretation** on this important verse?

4. I Timothy 2:5,6 - No Mediator for the Great Crowd.

‘For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus; who gave himself a ransom for all.’

Watchtower Teaching: They argue that, because Jesus mediates between God and men, He cannot be viewed as God, since a mediator is separate from those needing mediation.

The WT claims that Christ’s ransom sacrifice corresponded exactly to Adam’s life. The WT argues that, if Jesus were a part of the triune Godhead, ‘the ransom price would have been infinitely higher than what God’s Law required.’ (*Should you believe in the Trinity?*, p.21).

Bible Teaching: The folly of WT reasoning that ‘for Jesus to be a mediator between God and men, means that He cannot be God’, is seen in that **He could not be man either**, if the requirement was to be **separate from both parties**. The **truth** is that Jesus CAN mediate between God and men **because He is both God and man**. It was only as a man that Christ could represent humanity and die as a man. As God, however, Christ’s death has infinite value, sufficient to provide redemption for the sins of all people.

Isaiah 43:11 states that it is only God who saves: ‘I, even I, am the Lord (Jehovah); and beside me there is **no Saviour**.’ This important verse shows that:

a) A **claim to be Saviour is a claim to be God**; and

b) There is only **one Saviour**, that is God.

Hence Jesus is God, as seen by the NT calling Him ‘Saviour’ in John 4:42, Titus 2:13, II Peter 1:1.

Ask: Can you see how that **only God is the Saviour** (Isaiah 43:11), and that **Jesus is the Saviour** (Luke 2:11) requires that Jesus be God Almighty?

Ask: Since the WT claims that Christ’s death was only a ‘corresponding ransom’ for Adam, why did God need to send His Son to earth as a man, if all that was required was a perfect human? God could have created a perfect human from scratch.

In the Watchtower magazine, April 1, 1979, a reader’s question asks:

‘Is Jesus the mediator **only for anointed Christians (the 144,000)**?’ The WT answered ‘**yes**’. These remaining few are the only ones allowed to partake in the annual communion service.

This means that only about 5000 of the 144,000 are alive today (in 1996), who have a mediator. All other JW’s have no mediator. I John 2:2 states that:

‘He is the propitiation for our sins: and not for our sins only, but also for the **sins of the whole world**.’

Ask: Since the WT claims that Jesus is **Michael the archangel**, **how can he be the ‘MAN’** Christ Jesus (I Timothy 2:5)? This verse was written in 65 AD, with Jesus being in heaven, yet the WT claims that Jesus after His death reverted back to being Michael the archangel.

Both Jews and JW’s think that they can go to the Father without a mediator.

Ask: If one can get eternal life without Christ as mediator, then who needs Christ, and why did Christ have to die? **If Christ only became sin for the 144,000**, then the others have **no sin bearer, no Saviour, and are still in their sins**, in which they must die. What advantage is there in being a JW? (None whatsoever!)

Ask: You may ask them: ‘If you aren’t sure of eternal life, you have nothing to offer me’. Hence the imaginary earthly class have no Saviour, no mediator, no intercessor, no access to Jehovah, only eternal damnation.

Conclusion: About 200 times the NT states that salvation is by faith in Christ as Saviour, not by works, as seen in Ephesians 2:8,9; Titus 3:5; Galatians 2:16, etc.

Note: Acts 16:31,34 equate believing in Christ and believing in God as identical acts.

‘Believe on the **Lord Jesus Christ**, and thou shalt be saved.’ (v.31)

‘Believing in **God** with all his house.’ (v.34)

16. WATCHTOWER FALSE PROPHECIES

Four principles of dealing with JW’s on their false prophecies are as follows:

Principle I - The real problem with JW’s is the question of **religious authority**.

JW’s think that the WT has the greatest Hebrew, Greek and Bible scholars, when in reality they do not have any.

JW’s think that all religious questions are solved in Brooklyn, and nowhere else can truth be found. JW’s look unquestioningly to the WT, just as medieval Roman Catholics looked to Rome for truth.

To a JW the Bible has no real authority, except as correctly interpreted by the Watchtower.

JW’s are trained not to trust themselves or others to interpret the Bible, only the Watchtower.

If you silence and refute a JW by Bible arguments, which he cannot answer, he will just contact the Watchtower and they will give him their answers.

Key: As long as a JW trusts the WT organisation, you'll never get anywhere with him. Once a JW's **confidence** and **trust** in the WT **organisation** is shaken, he is more readily brought to salvation.

Principle II - To destroy a JW's blind obedience and submission to the WT, you must show them that the **Watchtower is not trustworthy or reliable.**

You must prove that the WT is not 'God's visible organisation on earth.'

Key: He must see that he has been deceived by the Watchtower. Until his confidence in the WT has been destroyed, he is unable to place his confidence or authority in the Bible alone. Until he looks to the Bible alone, there is no real common ground between you and a JW.

Principle III - To destroy a JW's blind allegiance to the WT, we must show from **Scripture** and **Watchtower literature** that the **Watchtower is a FALSE PROPHET**, and hence is unreliable, fraudulent, untrustworthy, and not worthy of his belief, obedience or submission. Tell a JW: 'The Watchtower is a false prophet and is trying to deceive you and me. It is condemned by Scripture as a false prophet.'

Question: How can we show that the Watchtower is a false prophet?

Step 1: A **true prophet** of God will give prophecies that will come true 100% of the time (Deuteronomy 18:20-22; Matthew 7:15-20).

A **false prophet** will give prophecies that fail to come true. The WT claims to be God's inspired prophet who gives prophecies under angelic direction. (WT, 1 April, 1972, p.197-200)

This '**prophet**' was not one man, but was a body of men and women. It was the small group of footstep followers of Jesus Christ, known at that time as International Bible Students.

Today they are known as **Jehovah's Christian witnesses.**' (*Watchtower*, 1 April 1972, p.197)

Step 2: Deuteronomy 18:20-22 and Matthew 7:15-20 tell us how to judge if the WT is a true or false prophet.

Step 3: In 100 years of giving prophecies, the WT has a **100% failure rate.**

All WT prophecies have been shown to be false by the passage of time.

Step 4: Deuteronomy 18:20-22 and Matthew 7:15-20 prove that the WT is a false prophet and does not speak in Jehovah's name. The Bible therefore commands us not to believe, trust, respect or fear the WT.

Step 5: Just as the WT has given **false prophecies**, so it has given **false doctrines.**

The WT has tried to cover up its false prophecies by wilful and deliberate lies and deceit.

Principle IV - It is best to first get the JW to recognize and **acknowledge that the WT is a false prophet**, then to discuss **doctrine** and Bible passages.

Let us look at these four steps proving how the WT is a false prophet:

Step 1: Get the JW to agree that the Bible clearly teaches that a **true prophet of God gives prophecies coming true 100% of the time**, & **false prophets** give prophecies that **don't come true**. Today, there are many 'prophets', all claiming to speak in God's name. We must ask the question found in Deuteronomy 18:21:

'If thou say in thine heart, "How shall we know the word which the Lord hath **not** spoken?"'

Question: Has Jehovah given us a test for us to distinguish between true and false prophets?

Moses' test: Yes, it is Deuteronomy 18:22: 'When a prophet speaketh in the name of Jehovah, if the thing **follow not**, nor come to pass, that is the thing which Jehovah hath **not** spoken; but the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously: thou shalt not be afraid of him.'

Jesus' test: Matthew 7:15-20 gives the test to distinguish between true and false prophets:

'Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravaging wolves. Ye shall know them by their fruits . . . A corrupt tree brings forth evil fruit.' The fruits of the tree are the prophecies of the prophet.

Just as a good tree **never** bears evil fruit, so a true prophet **NEVER** gives a false prophecy. Jesus said, 'By their fruits (prophecies) ye shall know them.'

In the JW *Awake* magazine, October 8, 1968, p.23 they say:

'True, there have been those in times past who predicted an "end to the world", even announcing a specific date . . . Yet, nothing happened. The "end" did not come. They were guilty of false prophesying. Why? What was missing? Missing from such people were God's truths and the evidence that He was guiding and using them.'

Hence, a false prophet, even though he spoke in Jehovah's Name, gave false prophecies (endorsed & published by the WT) which failed to come true. Here, the WT admits to being a false prophet.

Step 2: Has the Watchtower ever claimed to be God's prophet today? Is the WT Society the 'faithful and wise servant of Jehovah' proclaiming inspired messages from angels?

Ask the JW to 'read aloud the following sentences', and

Ask the JW to 'explain what you have just read'. Get him to answer the questions himself.

At Step 2, don't discuss if WT prophecies have come true.

Get the JW to agree that the WT claims to be God's prophet before you go to Step 3.

Consider this article in the Watchtower magazine of April, 1, 1972, pages 197 to 200.

The front page is reproduced on the next page to give the context, and to prove to JWs.

Ask: Does the Watchtower claim 'Jehovah's Christian Witnesses' are God's prophet for today?

Step 3: Ask, 'Can we agree that the Watchtower 'prophet' has given prophecies about events and dates in the future?' (Don't argue about 1914 here).

Ask 'Let us apply Moses' test and Jesus' test of a prophet to this modern day prophet.'

1. **What date is set for the close of that battle**(ie: Armageddon)?

'The date of the close of that "battle" is definitely marked in Scripture as **October 1914**. It is already in progress, its beginning dating from October 1874'.

(*Zions Watchtower*, 15 January 1892, p.1353)

2. **Did the Times of the Gentiles end in October 1914?**

a) In **1889** the WT said, ‘we present proofs that the setting up of the kingdom of God has already begun . . . and that **‘the battle of the great day of God almighty’** (Revelation 16:14), which will **end in AD 1914** with the **complete overthrow of the earth’s present rulership, is already commenced.**’

(In their 1915 edition of this same book they changed ‘AD 1914’ to ‘AD 1915’.)

b) On July 15, **1894** they said, ‘But bear in mind that **the end of 1914** is not the date for the *beginning*, but for **the end of the time of trouble.**’ (Reprints, p.1677).

c) In **1904** they said, ‘The stress of the great time of trouble will be on us soon, somewhere between 1910 and 1912 culminating with the **end of the ‘times of the Gentiles’, October 1914.**’ (The New Creation, p.579)

But the year 1914 ended without a single one of these predictions coming true.

d) In *Pastor Russell’s Sermons* (1917, p.676), Charles Taze Russell, founder and first president of the Jehovah’s Witnesses, said of World War I, ‘The **present great war in Europe is the beginning of the Armageddon of the Scriptures**.’

3. **Did God destroy the churches wholesale in 1918?**

‘Also, in the year **1918**, when God **destroys** the churches wholesale and the church members by millions, it shall be that any that escape shall come to the works of Pastor Russell to learn the meaning of the downfall of “Christianity”.’

(*Finished Mystery*, 1917 edition, p.485).

Question: Why did the 1926 edition change this quote to: ‘When God **begins** to destroy the churches?’

4. **Did Christ return to Earth in 1874 and set up the Millenium?**

‘The Millennium began in 1874, with the Return of Christ.’ (Studies, Vol 7, p.386)

‘After the Second Adventist hopes were disappointed in 1874, Barbour convinced Russell that Christ actually returned invisibly in 1874.’ (Studies, Vol 7, p.54)

5. **Did Abraham, Isaac and Jacob get resurrected and return to life in 1925?**

The **Society had a mansion in San Diego** named *Beth-Sarim* (House of Princes) **waiting for these resurrected prophets. It was built in 1930.** Frederick Franz (the president of the Society) in 1942 wrote a book titled *The New World*, and it says among other things:

‘. . . and hence **those faithful men of old may be expected back from the dead any day now . . . In this expectation the house of San Diego, California**, which house has been much publicized with malicious intent by the religious enemy, **was built in 1930**, and named ‘Beth-Sarim’, meaning ‘House of the Princes’. It is now held in trust for the occupancy of those princes on their return.’ (Quoted from *The New World* page 104).

The **house was sold a few years later.**

‘The year **1925** is a date definitely and clearly marked in the Scriptures, even more

clearly than that of 1914’. (Watchtower 15 July 1924, p.211)

‘Some anticipated the work would end in 1925. The **Lord did not so state.**’

(Watchtower 1 August 1926, p 232)

6. **How can Revelation 1:7 ‘Behold he cometh with clouds, and every eye shall see him.’ fit with this WT quote?**

‘Surely there is not the slightest room for doubt in the mind of a truly consecrated child of God that the **Lord Jesus is present and has been since 1874.**’ (WT, 1 Jan. 1924, p5)

‘We are not to look for Christ to be visible to human eyes when he comes again.’

(Watchtower, 15 February 1955, p.102)

7. **Did the Battle of Armageddon take place in 1975?**

‘Are we to assume from this study that the battle of Armageddon will be all over by the autumn of 1975, and the long looked for 1000-year reign of Christ will begin by then? Possibly. It may involve only a difference of weeks or months, **not years.**’ (*Watchtower*, 15 August 1968, p.499)

‘A great crowd of people are confident that great destruction is imminent, which has been a major factor in their decision **not to have children**.’ (WT, 8 Nov. 1974, p.11)
‘Reports are heard of brothers selling their homes and property and planning to finish out the rest of their days in this old system in the pioneer service. Certainly this is a fine way to spend the **short time** remaining before the wicked world’s end.’
(*Kingdom Ministry*, May 1974, p3)

8. **Did the Great Pyramid grow by 41 inches (3457 minus 3416=41) in 10 years** (1903-13)?

‘the Great Pyramid. seems in a remarkable way to teach, in harmony with all the prophets, an outline of the plan of God, past, present and future.’

(*Studies*, Vol 3, 1903 edition, p.314)

‘Then measuring . . . we find it to be **3416 inches**, symbolizing 3416 years . . . This calculation shows **AD 1874** as marking the beginning of the period of trouble . . .’

(*Studies*, Vol 3, **1903 edition**, p.342)

‘Then measuring . . . we find it to be **3457 inches**, symbolizing 3457 years . . . This calculation shows **AD 1915** as marking the beginning of the period of trouble . . .’

(*Studies*, Vol 3, **1913 edition**, p 342)

‘Those who have devoted themselves to the pyramid . . . The mind of such was turned away from Jehovah and his Word.’ (Watchtower 15 November 1928, p 344)

9. According to the Watchtower ‘prophet’, **will man ever reach the moon by rocket?**

This Watchtower false prophecy was printed in ‘*The Truth shall make you Free*’ p.285 in **1943**.

It was **proven false** on October 4, **1957** when Russia’s **Sputnik I** escaped earth’s air envelope.

10. Note the Watchtower’s confidence that their false prophecies will come true:

a) **1874**: The Day of Vengeance, p.621.

b) **1914**: ‘Studies in the Scriptures,’ Series II, 1912, p.76,77.

c) **1925**: ‘*Millions Now Living Will Never Die*’, p.88-89.

d) **1975**: ‘*Awake*’, 8 October, 1968, stated that 6000 years of human history would end in autumn 1975.
‘*Why Human Creation will be Set Free*’, p.29:

Step 4 - Ask: Now that you have examined Watchtower prophecies, you can apply the Biblical test to see if the Watchtower is a true or false prophet.

What was supposed to happen, according to the Watchtower, on the following dates: 1874, 1914, 1918, 1925 and 1975?

Question 1: With Judgment Day honesty, we must ask ourselves, ‘Did any of the above prophecies **fail** to come about?’

The only honest answer is that, ‘All of them failed to be fulfilled. Every one of them failed. They were all false prophecies.’

Question 2: What verdict did Moses and Jesus tell us to pass on prophets such as the Watchtower?

Answer: The Watchtower is a false prophet (Deuteronomy 18:22). It is not God’s organisation, and it does not speak in Jehovah’s Name (Deuteronomy 18:20). We should not

be afraid of it or respect it. (Deuteronomy 18:22). We must immediately take our stand with Moses and Jesus in rejecting the Watchtower as a false prophet (Matthew 7:15)

Question 3: But, if the Watchtower is a false prophet and cannot be trusted, but must be rejected, to where shall we turn for spiritual guidance?

Answer: Not to any human organisation, but to the Bible, God's Word as our only ultimate authority.

Re-examine everything the Watchtower has taught you. Study the Bible **without their books or magazines**. Don't let a false prophet tell you what the Bible says. You must study the Bible for yourself.

17. CONTRADICTIONS AND FALSE DOCTRINES OF THE WATCHTOWER:

1. Big Brother thought control of the Watchtower

'An individual must have *The Watchtower* to understand the Bible' (1983 Yearbook, p 21)

'Avoid independent thinking . . . questioning the counsel that is provided by God's visible organization.' (Watchtower 15 January 1983, p 22)

'Fight against independent thinking'. (Watchtower 15 January 1983, p 27)

'Unless we are in touch with this channel of communication that God is using, we will not progress along the road to life, **no matter how much Bible reading we do.**'

(Watchtower, 1 December 1981, p 27)

'The Vatican belittles Bible study by claiming it is the only **organization** authorized and **qualified to interpret** the Bible'. (Watchtower 1 July 1943, p 201)

'from among the ranks of Jehovah's people . . . haughty ones . . . say that it is sufficient to read the Bible exclusively, either alone or in small groups at home. But, strangely, **through such 'Bible reading', they have reverted right back to apostate doctrines that commentaries by Christendom's clergy were teaching 100 years ago..**'

(Watchtower, 15 August 1981, pp 28-29)

'Meekly go along with the organization. Do not pit human reasoning, sentiment, and personal feelings against the organization.' (Watchtower, 1 February 1952, p 80)

2. Has the Watchtower swallowed the 'exclusivism' lie of the Roman Catholic church?

M'Clintock and Strong's *Cyclopoedia*, Volume II, page 386, says .

'As the **Roman hierarchy** was developed, the **clergy** came to . . . be recognized as the **only priesthood** and the **essential means of communication** between man and God.'

(1000 Years, pp 377-78)

'Is not the **Watch Tower** Bible and Tract Society the **one and only channel** which the Lord has used in dispensing his truth continually since the beginning of the harvest period?' (Watchtower, 1 April 1919, p 6414)

3. Why did the Watchtower change its view on vaccination and organ transplants?

a) '**Vaccination** is a **direct violation** of the everlasting covenant that God made with Noah after the flood.' (Golden Age, 4 February 1931, p 293)

'Vaccinations appear to have caused a marked **decrease in diseases**' (A, 22 Aug 1965, p 20)

b) Jehovah's Witnesses consider **all organ transplants** to be **cannibalism**, hence unacceptable'. (A, 8 June 1968, p 21)

'Organ transplants are **not necessarily cannibalistic.**' (Watchtower, 15 March 1980, p 31)

4. Why did the Watchtower change its view on Christmas?

'Don't quibble about the date; **join in with the world** and **celebrate Christmas.**'

(*Watchtower*, 1 December 1904, p.3468)
'We all need to face up to the fact that **Christmas** and its music are not from Jehovah, the God of truth. Then what is their source? Satan the Devil.' (Watchtower, 15 Dec.1983,p 7)

5. Why did the Watchtower change its view on the Cross?

'beginning with the issue of October 15, 1931, *The Watchtower* no longer bore the cross and crown symbol on its cover.' (1975 Yearbook, p 148)

6. Why did the Watchtower change its view on who Jesus and Michael are?

a) 'Let all the angels of God worship him' [that must include Michael, the chief angel, hence **Michael is not the Son of God.**' (Watchtower, November 1879, p 48)

'Michael the great prince' is none other than **Jesus Christ** himself. - Daniel 12:1'

(Watchtower 15 December 1984, p 29)

'Michael in Revelation 12:7 is the **pope of Rome.**' (Studies, Vol 7, p 188)

b) '**Jesus** is the Alpha and the Omega, the **Almighty**, of Revelation 1:8'

(Studies, Vol 7, p 15)

'**Jesus** is the Alpha and the Omega of Revelation 21:6'. (Studies, Vol 7, p 318)

7. Why is the Watchtower confused about Romans 10:13, 10:14 and Revelation 22:12?

a) '**Romans 10:13** is referring to **Jesus**' (Watchtower, 1 May 1978, p 12)

'Romans 10:13 is referring to **Jehovah**' (Watchtower, 1 February 1980, p 16)

b) '**Romans 10:14** refers to **Jesus**' (Watchtower, 1 December 1903, p 3282)

'Romans 10:14-16 refers to **Jehovah**' (Watchtower, 1 July 1940, p 200)

c) '**Revelation 22:12** is referring to **Jehovah**' (A, 22 August 1978, p 28)

'Revelation 22:7, **12**, 20 is referring to **Jesus**'. (Watchtower, 1 October 1978, p 15)

8. Why does the Watchtower teach JW's to tell lies?

'**Lying to God's enemies is not really lying but war strategy**' (WT,1 June 1960, p352)

9. Why did the Watchtower change its view on military service?

'no command in the Scriptures against military service.' (WT, 1 August 1898, p 2345)

'nothing against our consciences in going into the army' (WT, 15 April 1903, p 3180)

'Due to conscience, Jehovah's Witnesses refuse military service.' (WT, 1 Feb 1951, p 73)

'Should you defend yourself? A homeowner has the right to **inflict hard blows**. Jesus' apostles had at least two swords.' (Watchtower, 8 September 1975, pp 27-28)

10. Why did the Watchtower change its view on worshipping Christ?

'You must **worship** and bow down to Jehovah's chief one, namely Jesus Christ.'

(Watchtower, 15 October 1945, p 313)

11. Is salvation in a man-made Watchtower Organisation or in Christ?

'come to Jehovah's **organization** for salvation . . .' (Watchtower, 15 Nov 1981, p 21)

'Put faith in a victorious organization!' (Watchtower, 1 March 1979, p 1)

12. Is it right for the Watchtower to tell people to defer marriage till lasting peace comes to the earth?

'We can well **defer** our marriage until lasting peace comes to the earth.' (Children, p366)

'Forbidding to marry is wrong.' (Watchtower, 1 April 1964, p 199)

'Those who forbid marriage have departed from the faith' (WT, 15 Sept. 1979, p 31)

'Shocking as it is, even some who have been prominent in Jehovah's organization have

succumbed to immoral practices, including homosexuality, wife swapping, and child molesting.’
(*Watchtower*, 1 January 1986, p 13)

13. **Would a true prophet of God make false prophecies about World War II?**

‘The Nazis will destroy the British.’ (Fifth Column, p 15)

The new book titled *Children* will prove useful ‘in the **remaining months before Armageddon**’ (Watchtower, 15 September 1941, p 288)

‘The **end of Nazi Fascist hierarchy** will come and will mark the **end forever of demon rule.**’ (Watchtower, 15 December 1941, p 377)

14. **Which famous people were expected to live in Beth-Sarim?**

‘. . . those **faithful men of old** may be expected back from the dead any day now . . . In this expectation the house of San Diego, California, which house has been much publicized with malicious intent by the religious enemy, was built, in 1930, and named “**Beth-Sarim**”, meaning “House of the Princes”. It is now held in trust for the **occupancy of those princes on their return.**’ (New World, p 104)

‘**Job** is to be resurrected shortly with those faithful men and to appear on earth with them.’ (New World, p 130)

‘The year 1925 came and went. Jesus’ anointed followers were still on earth as a class. The faithful men of old times - **Abraham, David** and others - **had not been resurrected** to become princes in the earth. (Psalm 45:16) So, as Anna MacDonald recalls: “1925 was a sad year for many brothers. Some of them were stumbled; their hopes were dashed . . . Instead of it being considered a ‘probability’, they read into it that it was a ‘certainty’, and some prepared for their own loved ones with expectancy of their resurrection.”’ (1975 Yearbook, p 146)

15. **From 1940-43, the Watchtower made 44 predictions of the immanence of Armageddon. Why did they fail?**

Consider these examples:

In September **1940** they said, ‘The kingdom is here, the king is enthroned. Armageddon is just ahead . . . The great climax has been reached.’ (The Messenger, September 1940, p 6)
They said, ‘The Final End is Very Near’. (The Watchtower, Sept. 15, 1941 p 276).

‘The remaining months before Armageddon . . .’ (p 288)
They said, ‘The time is at hand for Jesus Christ to take possession of all things’.

(The Watchtower, January 15, 1942 p 28)

On May 1, **1942** they said, ‘Now, with Armageddon immediately before us . . .’ (p 139)

On May 1, **1943** they said, ‘The final end of all things . . . is at hand.’ (p 139)

On September 1, **1944** they said, ‘Armageddon is near at hand’. (p 264)

In **1946**, ‘The disaster of Armageddon . . . is at the door’. (Let God be True 1946, p 194)

In **1950** they said, ‘The March is on! Where? To the field of Armageddon for the ‘war of the great day of God the Almighty’’. (This Means Everlasting Life, 1950, p 311)

In **1953** they said, ‘Armageddon is so near at hand it will strike the generation now living’.

(You May Survive Armageddon speech p 11)

In **1955** they said, ‘It is becoming clear that the war of Armageddon is near its breaking out point’.

(Ibid p 331)

In **1958** they said, ‘When will Armageddon be fought? . . . It will be very soon.’

(From Paradise Lost to Paradise Regained, 1958, p 205)

JW leaders in *Awake* magazine, 8 October, 1968, p 23 admitted that certain persons had falsely predicted the end of the world. They asked why these false prophecies were given. Here they admit that they themselves were false prophets, that they lacked God’s guidance, and were lying:

‘True, there have been those in times past who predicted an “end to the world”, even announcing a specific date. The “end” did not come. They were guilty of false prophesying. Why? What was missing? . . . **Missing from such people** were God’s truths and the evidence that **He was guiding** and using them.’ (Awake, 8 Oct., 1968, p.23)
Note: Deuteronomy 18:20-22 states that false prophets must die.

16. **Why did Armageddon fail to come in 1975 as the Watchtower predicted?**

In *Kingdom Ministry*, **May 1974**, the world’s end was said to be ‘so very near’ that JWs were commended who sold ‘their homes and property’ to devote themselves to full-time service in ‘the short time remaining before the wicked world’s end’. (p 3)

In **1975** they said, ‘The fulfillment . . . is immediately ahead of us.’

(Man’s Salvation out of World Distress at Hand, p 312)

In **1975** they said, ‘Very short must be the time that remains . . .’ (Ibid p 349)

1975 came and went, thus discouraging and embarrassing the WT and JWs. Yet from **1976** to today the WT still says Armageddon and the end of the world is very near.

Conclusion: If the WT has been wrong on every prediction, how can anybody trust it?

Question: Why has the WT missed the date of Armageddon every time it predicted it?

The WT has not only lied to people they call ‘God’s enemies’, but they have lied to their own people.

After reading these WT false prophecies, and its own admission that it lied, how can the WT be trusted any more?

Ask: Has the Watchtower ever lied, covered up, or changed doctrines and dates?

If God speaks through the WT, then He must change His mind very often.

Consider the following changes in dates, prophecies and doctrines:

1. They changed the beginning of the ‘time of the end’ from 1799 to 1914;
2. They changed the date of the second coming of Christ from 1874 to 1914;
3. They changed the nature of Christ’s return from earthly visible to heavenly and invisible;
4. They changed the end of the 6000 years of creation from 1872 to 1975;
5. They changed vaccination from being forbidden to being permitted;
6. They changed the ‘Faithful and wise servant’ from C T Russell to the WT Society;
7. They changed from allowing worship of Jesus to forbidding it;
8. They changed their view of Israel from literal national to spiritual of all believers.

Question: Why so many changes?

Answer: Since the predicted events didn’t happen, they covered up their false prophecies to hide the fact that God really hadn’t spoken through the Watchtower Society.

Do their false prophecies support their claim of spiritual enlightenment and guidance?

What a joke! The WT Society has misled millions of people in claiming it is God’s sole channel of communication on earth today.

Rutherford believed that God’s Holy Spirit had ceased to function as his teacher, and had been replaced by angels who taught him in his mind. (WT, Sept 1, 1930, p.263 & Feb 1, 1935, p.41)

Today the leaders claim that both the Holy Spirit, and angels communicate information to them. (WT, March 1, 1972, p.155 and Aug 1, 1987, p.19)

Conclusion: False prophecies lead us to conclude that the Watchtower is receiving its information from **demons**, rather than from God.

Question: Why, when the WT knew of demon spirits guiding Johannes Greber in **1956**, did they still continue quoting him to support their doctrines (for 20 years) until **1976**.

‘Very plainly the **spirits** in which ex-priest Greber believes, helped him in his translation’

Watchtower, 15 February **1956**, p.110-111

The WT quotes Greber for support in these cases after 1956: *Make Sure*. **1965**, p 489

Aids to Bible Understanding, p 1134 and 1669

Watchtower, Sept 15, **1962**, page 554

Watchtower, Oct 15, **1975**, page 640

Watchtower, April 15, **1976**, page 231

Question: If the Watchtower is God’s voice, why did they not know that Greber was an occult spiritist?

The Watchtower condemns itself as a false prophet in ‘Paradise Rest’, p.353:

- ‘Jehovah . . . will put all false prophets to shame by not fulfilling the false prediction .’
‘A pastor prophesied the end; he was called a false prophet’. WT, 15 Oct 1958, p.613
‘Similarly’ the ‘false prophet’ is not a person, but is a system or an organisation.’

Watchtower, 15 June 1974, p.381

The Watchtower is setting itself up for another false prophecy as seen in the following quote: ‘Before the 1914 generation completely dies out, God’s judgment must be executed’.

Watchtower, 1 May 1985, p.4

Beware of Jehovah’s false witnesses!

Ask: Do you agree with the Watchtower instruction that when one discovers false prophets, ‘then the people should no longer trust them as safe guides’?

(May 15, 1930, p.154)

A JW may defend the WT by saying that those prophecies were ‘mistakes’ and that the organisation has learned not to predict when the end of the world will be.

Ask: Read the statement purpose inside the front cover of *Awake*:

‘This magazine builds confidence in the Creator’s promise of a peaceful and secure New Order before the generation that saw the events of 1914 pass away.’

This is another prophecy!

Conclusion: Rather than fearfully obey the Watchtower, recognize it as a false prophet, leave it, and follow the **true prophet**, Jesus Christ.

18. FOUR TESTS for the WATCHTOWER

to check if it is God’s sole channel Of communicating His will to man today.

If God speaks only through the Watchtower society, then:

Test 1: The New World Translation must be accurate. But is it? No, see the earlier section.

Test 2: According to Deut. 18:20-22 its prophecies must all come true. But have they? No.

Test 3: Its scholarship should be trustworthy. But is it?

No, due to them changing doctrines, dates and interpretations.

Test 4: If they admit to receiving teachings from angels or spirits, which have been proven false, then is their ‘spirit’ source trustworthy?

No, it’s from demons, because demons lie.

19. THE 144,000 ANOINTED CLASS and OTHER SHEEP

Watchtower Teaching:

They claim that only 144,000 JWs go to heaven, as the ‘Anointed class’. (Rev. 7:4 & 14:1-3). They claim that all other JWs are part of God’s ‘other sheep’, and will live forever on a paradise earth.

They claim that only the 144,000 are born again as sons of God to share in the heavenly Kingdom. These will have a spiritual existence in heaven, not a physical resurrection, as they claim that ‘flesh and blood cannot inherit God’s Kingdom’.

JWs teach that only a few enter this spiritual Kingdom as a ‘little flock’ of believers (Luke 12:32).

JWs claim that this 144,000 began with the apostles and was filled in 1935.

The WT teaches that only members of the 144,000 anointed class are:

1) Born again	12) Members of Christ’s body
2) Sons of God	Members in God’s temple
3) Brothers with Christ	Members of Abraham’s seed
4) Conformed to Christ’s image	Members of the royal priesthood
5) In union with Christ	Justified by faith
6) Heirs with Christ	Sanctified
7) Members of the New Covenant	Receive glorified bodies
8) Can partake of the Lord’s Supper	Enjoy life in heaven
9) Baptized into Christ’s death	Will rule with Christ
10) Baptized in the Holy Spirit	Will see Christ and God
11) Members of the church	

This list makes most New Testament blessings and privileges **irrelevant** for most JWs.

The WT claims that the 144,000 will rule from heaven over the great crowd on earthly paradise (Rev 7:9), where the earth will remain forever (Ecclesiastes 1:4; Psalm 104:5).

The great crowd (Revelation 7:9) is the same as the ‘other sheep’ of John 10:16, who hope to survive Armageddon and enjoy Christ’s rule on a perfect earth.

Salvation for both classes is by works of witnessing or distributing WT literature door to door. Consider these verses the WT uses and the correct Bible replies:

1. Luke 12:32 - The ‘Little Flock’ as the 144,000 ‘Anointed class’

Watchtower teaching: ‘Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father’s good pleasure to give you the Kingdom.’ JWs claim that only this group go to heaven. WT teaches that Old Testament saints such as Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and prophets are not part of this ‘little flock’, but are part of the ‘other sheep’ of John 10:16, the ‘great crowd’ of Revelation 7:9.

Bible Teaching:

1) The WT interpretation of Luke 12:32 **violates the context**. Luke 12:22-34 shows Jesus speaking to **His disciples on earth in the first century**, not to another 144,000 anointed class that might develop from 30 AD to 1935. JWs are reading something into the passage that is not there.

2) Elsewhere Jesus referred to **His disciples** as **sheep in His flock**:

(a) Matthew 10:16 - ‘I send you forth as sheep in the midst of wolves’

(b) Matthew 26:31 - ‘I will smite the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock shall be scattered abroad.’ (Spoken to the disciples before His crucifixion.)

Jesus called His disciples a ‘little flock’ because they were a small, defenceless group that could be easily preyed upon. They need not to worry because Christ would protect them.

Ask: In Luke 12:22, who is Jesus speaking to? (His 12 disciples)

Ask: Where in Luke 12:32 does it say that the little flock is the 144,000 of Rev 7:14?

Ask: How do you know that the 144,000 was completed in 1935?

3) Jesus never once restricted the Kingdom of God or Kingdom of Heaven to 144,000 people.

Ask: Can you think of any verse in the Bible where Jesus limits the citizenship of heaven to 144,000?

4) I John 5:1 ‘**Whosoever** believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.’. The words ‘whosoever believeth’ are **open ended**, including everybody who believes, not just 144,000.

Ask: Doesn’t the ‘whosoever’ in I John 5:1 include everyone and not just 144,000?

5) The Watchtower teaching that **Old Testament saints are not part of the heavenly class** is **wrong**, as seen from Hebrews 11:13-16 where Abel, Enoch, Noah and Abraham all sought a **heavenly** country (v.16), not an earthly one.

6) Matthew 8:11 shows Abraham, Isaac and Jacob sitting down in the Kingdom of heaven.

Ask: Who is right here, the Bible or the Watchtower?

2. Revelation 7:4 and 14:1-3 - Are the 144,000 in the ‘anointed class’?

Watchtower Teaching: The WT claims that the 144,000 are a literal number of people, but that 12,000 people from each of the 12 tribes of Israel are **not literally** national Israel.

We ask, ‘Why would 144,000 be literal, but the 12,000 in each tribe be figurative?’ WT reply:

a) There never was a tribe of **Joseph** in the OT, even though it is mentioned in Rev. 7:4-8;

b) The tribes of **Ephraim** and **Dan** are not included in Revelation 7;

c) The **Levites**, not reckoned as an OT tribe, are mentioned as a tribe in Revelation 7.

Bible Teaching:

1) **Ask:** Why does the WT **switch interpretation** in Revelation 7:4 from **literal** (144,000 as a precise number of people) to **figurative** in the last part of the verse where they say the 12,000 do not represent precise numbers of people from each of Israel’s 12 tribes?

2) **Women** are excluded from this group of 144,000 in Revelation 14:4 ‘These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins.’

Masculine pronouns used show that this group are **all men**.

3) Heaven awaits **all** who believe in Christ, not just the 144,000. Check these verses:

1. Philippians 3:20 ‘For our conversation is in **heaven**; . . .’

2. Colossians 3:1 ‘Seek those things which are **above**.’

3. Hebrews 3:1 ‘Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the **heavenly** calling.’

4. Hebrews 12:22 ‘But ye are come unto Mount Zion, and unto the city of the living God, the **heavenly** Jerusalem . . .’

5. II Corinthians 5:1 ‘We know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved (physical death), we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the **heavens**.’

6. Colossians 1:5 ‘For the hope which is laid up for you in **heaven**, whereof ye heard before in the word of the truth of the gospel.’

7. Hebrews 11:16 ‘But now they desire a better country, that is, an **heavenly** . . .’

8. Hebrews 10:34 ‘Knowing in yourselves that ye have in **heaven** a better and an enduring substance.’

9. I Peter 1:4 ‘To an inheritance . . . **reserved in heaven** for you.’

10. Revelation 19:1 ‘I heard a great voice of much people **in heaven**.’

11. Matthew 6:20 ‘Lay up for yourselves treasures **in heaven**.’

12. John 12:26 ‘. . . **where I am** (heaven), **there** shall also my servant be.’

13. John 14:3 ‘I go and prepare a **place** for you...that **where I am** (heaven), there **ye** may be also.’

Key: Making a difference between those with an earthly and heavenly destiny has no warrant in the Bible anywhere.

1. God has chosen the poor of this world who are rich in faith to inherit the kingdom, not just the 144,000. ‘Hath not God chosen the **poor of this world** rich in faith, and **heirs of the Kingdom** which he hath promised to them that love him.’ (James 2:5). There is no distinction made here between 2 classes, only the poor of this world, (more than 144,000).

2. All who believe in Christ receive God’s righteousness. ‘The righteousness of God by faith of Jesus Christ unto **all** and upon **all** them that believe: for there is no difference.’ (Romans 3:22)

3. John 10:16 ‘there shall be **one fold** (flock), and one shepherd.’ - not two folds, one on earth and one in heaven, but **ONE FLOCK (NWT)**.

Ask: How do you reconcile WT teaching of two flocks (WT: one earthly and one heavenly) with John 10:16 which says that **all believers will be together in one flock** (NWT)?

Question 1: ‘Are the 12 tribes of Israel in Revelation 7:14 literal or figurative?’

Nowhere else in the Bible are references to the 12 tribes of Israel figurative. They are always a literal, ethnic group.

Ask: Can you see that the WT interpretation of Revelation 7:4 goes against common usage of literal ‘tribe’ and literal ‘Israel’?

Question 2: Why are the OT tribes of **Dan** and **Ephraim** omitted in Revelation 7?

The OT has 20 varying lists of tribes of Israel.

a) **Dan’s** tribe was omitted because they were guilty of **idolatry**, and were largely wiped out. (Judges 18:1,30). Dan became one of two centres of idolatry in the Northern Kingdom (I Kings 12:29).

b) **Ephraim** is omitted from Revelation 7, while Joseph and Manasseh are included. Why? Ephraim was also involved in **idolatry** and pagan worship (Judges 17; Hosea 4:17).

Ask:

1) What is the Watchtower’s position on idolatry?

2) If the tribes of Dan and Ephraim were guilty of idolatry, do you think that these tribes should be listed in Revelation 7 as God’s servants? (No).

3) So you agree that there is a good reason for omitting Ephraim and Dan in Revelation 7?

4) Can you see that the Watchtower’s figurative interpretation of the 12 tribes is wrong, because it is based on the rightful omission of Dan and Ephraim?

Question 3: Why was the tribe of Levi included in the Revelation 7 list?

In the Old Testament, the tribe of Levi were not part of the 12 tribes because of their priestly separation under the Mosaic Law. Now that their tribe’s priestly functions have ceased with the first coming of Christ, our Great High Priest, there is no further need for their services as priests. Hence there is no reason for keeping them separate from the other tribes any longer. They will be properly included in the tribal listing in Revelation 7 and 14.

Therefore the WT’s view of the 144,000 as a specially anointed class is twisting of scripture. **Note:** JWs insist that the 12,000 from each tribe of Israel are figurative or symbolic.

Question: How is it that the sum of 12 symbolic numbers equals a literal 144,000? How can 12 times a symbolic 12,000 equal a literal 144,000? The total should also be symbolic, according to their reasoning, to be consistent. Their interpretation again gives a contradiction.

3. John 10:16 - The ‘Other Sheep’

‘And **other sheep** I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be **one fold** and one shepherd.’

Watchtower Teaching: JW’s believe in two classes of people: the 144,000 heavenly class, and the ‘other sheep’, great crowd class who will receive eternal life and live forever on an earthly paradise.

Bible Teaching: The ‘**other sheep**’ in John 10:16 refers to **Gentile believers**, as opposed to Jews who are the ‘lost sheep of Israel’. (Matthew 10:6 and 15:24).

The one flock and one shepherd of John 10:16 agrees with Galatians 3:28 with ‘neither Jew nor Greek . . . ye are **all one in Christ Jesus**.’

All believers will dwell together as ‘one flock’ under ‘one shepherd’.

There will not be one flock of believers in heaven, and one flock of believers on earth.

Ask: How do you reconcile WT teaching of two classes, when the Bible clearly states that God’s people are **one in Christ**, and are part of ‘**one flock**’ under ‘one shepherd’?

4. **Revelation 7:9 - The ‘Great Crowd’ as the ‘Other Sheep**

‘After this I beheld, and lo, a **great multitude** (‘great crowd’ in NWT), which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood **before the throne**, and before the Lamb . . .’ (Revelation 7:9)

Watchtower Teaching: JW’s teach that in 1935 God stopped calling people to a heavenly hope with Christ. They say that in 1935 he began gathering a secondary class of believers, outside the body of Christ, who would live forever on earth in the flesh, as the great crowd of Revelation 7:9-17.

This is one of the WT’s major doctrines, because it is the basis for convincing JW’s that:

- 1) They cannot become members of the body of Christ (I Corinthians 12:27)
- 2) They cannot be born again (John 3:3)
- 3) They cannot go to heaven (II Timothy 4:18)
- 4) They cannot be baptized by the Holy Spirit (I Corinthians 12:13)
- 5) They are not entitled to share in the communion loaf and cup (I Corinthians 10:16-17)
- 6) They are not in Christ’s New Covenant (Hebrews 12:24)
- 7) They cannot be fully justified by faith in Christ (Romans 3:26)

Hence the WT uses this ‘1935 Doctrine’ to rob its followers of the NT relationship with God.

Ask: Where does the Bible teach that entrance to the Christian congregation would be closed in 1935, with a secondary great crowd being gathered after that? Nowhere!

They can find no Biblical support for the 1935 date.

They refer to Rutherford’s ‘flash of light’ on 31 May 1935 at the Washington JW Convention.

Note: The verses JW’s cite actually locate the great crowd as ‘before the throne and before the Lamb’ (Revelation 7:9), ‘before the throne of God’ (7:15), and ‘in his temple’ (7:15), all heavenly locations, rather than on the earth as the WT teaches.

This is similar to the wording of the only other mention of the ‘great crowd’ in **Revelation 19:1** ‘I heard . . . a loud voice of a **great crowd in heaven**’ (NWT).

Ask: Where is this great crowd? In heaven! Emphasize that the WT has taught them wrongly. Jesus in John 17:20-24 prayed that all His present and future disciples would ‘be **with me where I am**’ in heaven regardless of whether they were saved before or after 1935.

Consider the following conversation with a JW:

Q1: You: I’ve heard that you believe that you are part of a great crowd who will receive everlasting life on earth, instead of going to heaven. Is that true? Can you show me the Great Crowd in the Bible?

JW: Yes, it is in Revelation 7:9, ‘look! a great crowd...before the throne and before the Lamb’

Q2: You: But Revelation 7:15 places the **great crowd** before the throne of God **in heaven**, doesn’t it? ‘...they render him sacred service day and night **in his temple**’. (NWT).

JW: Well, the throne of God is in heaven, but the great crowd is on the earth. All creation stands before the throne of God.

Q3: You: Would you read Rev 19:1 in your Bible to see where it locates the great crowd?

JW: It says, ‘After these things I heard a loud voice of a great crowd **in heaven**.’

Q4: You: A great crowd where?

JW: The great crowd is on earth.

Q5: You: Is that what the verse says? Read it again.

JW: It says heaven, but the great crowd is on earth.

Q6: You: How can you say that the great crowd is on earth, when your Bible plainly says ‘a great crowd in heaven’?

Conclusion:

Ask: Where in the Bible does it say that the great crowd is exempt from heaven?

Ask: Where does it say that the great crowd is relegated to live on earth?

Ask: Since the great crowd serves God in His temple (7:15), where is God’s temple located?

Answer: Revelation 11:19 and 14:17 say ‘the **temple which is in heaven**’.

Ask: According to Revelation 19:1, is the great crowd in heaven or on earth?

19. **WATCHTOWER and BIBLE SUFFICIENCY**

‘All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness; That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.’ (II Timothy 3:16,17)

JW’s agree with and quote this verse often, but they don’t really believe that a man of God is ‘fully competent and completely equipped’ (NWT) unless he has their organisation’s books and magazines. To them, the Bible alone is not enough.

What happens if a JW does read the Bible alone, without WT books and magazines?

Note what they say about their ex-members:

‘They say that it is sufficient to read the Bible exclusively, either alone or in small groups at home. But strangely, through such “Bible reading”, they have reverted right back to the apostate doctrines that commentaries by Christendom’s clergy were teaching 100 years ago.’ (*Watchtower*, 15 Aug 1981, p 28,29)

So the WT itself admits that JW’s who begin reading the Bible alone, stop believing WT doctrines, and return to the doctrines taught in Christian churches.

Question: Whose doctrines then, are the ones that are truly based on the Bible?

Fundamental Christianity’s doctrines are Bible based, by the WT’s own admission.

20. **BIRTHDAYS**

JW’s who celebrate Birthdays, Christmas, Easter or send Birthday cards, will be disfellowshipped. The WT only admits to **two** birthdays in the Bible, but **three** were celebrated. There was Pharaoh’s (Genesis 40:20), Herod’s (Matthew 14:6) and Jesus Christ’s birthday which was celebrated by the angels (Luke 2:10-14).

The WT conveniently omits Christ’s birthday because it destroys their point in saying that all birthdays in the Bible were negative. They forbid birthday celebrations because Pharaoh killed the chief baker and Herod killed John the Baptist on their birthdays.

Bible Teaching: We allow birthday celebrations because:

- 1) Jesus Christ's birthday was celebrated by angels, shepherds and wise men. WT doesn't celebrate Christ's birthday, because Jesus is not of supreme importance to them.
- 2) Paul said that observing special days was the individual's own choice (Romans 14:5,6).
- 3) JW's celebrate their wedding anniversaries which celebrates the birth of their marriage.
- 4) Concluding that a particular day is evil, just because something bad happened on that day, is very warped logic. 'This is 'guilt by association'. Genesis 40:20-22 proves only that Pharaoh was evil, not birthdays.

Ask: What is the source of evil in Genesis 40:20-22? Pharaoh or the birthday?

In Job 1:4, Job's sons went and feasted in their houses, every one on his day. This phrase 'on his day' most likely referred to each son's birthday. When their birthday arrived, to celebrate it, each invited his brothers and sisters to eat and drink with him. Job 1:1 describes Job as perfect and upright, which God would not say if celebrating birthdays was wrong.

21. IS JESUS 'MICHAEL THE ARCHANGEL'?

Watchtower Teaching WT claims that Daniel 10:13,21; 12:1; and I Thess 4:16 teach that:

- 1) Jesus existed as Michael the **archangel** before his birth to Mary; then
- 2) Jesus gave up his spirit existence as an angel when he entered Mary's womb to become a **human**;
- 3) At the resurrection he was recreated as Michael the **archangel**.

They describe Christ's progressive existence as angel, then human, then angel.

'Michael, one of the chief princes' (Daniel 10:13). 'Michael your prince' (Daniel 10:21).

'Michael the great prince' (Daniel 12:1). JW's think that Jesus must be Michael because of Michael's authority over other angels as a chief prince.

The WT teaches that Jesus Christ was Michael the archangel, who was born as a human, died and was raised up as an archangel again. They refer to Jesus Christ as Michael the archangel. (*Watchtower*, 15 Feb, 1979, p.31).

Bible Teaching:

- 1) Michael is 'one of the chief princes' (10:21), but Jesus Christ is the only begotten Son in John 3:16. 'Begotten' in Greek is 'monogenes' meaning unique one of a kind. Michael being 'one of the chief princes' means that he is just one among a group of chief angels.

Ask: Where is Jesus called a 'chief Prince' in the Bible?

Ask: Where is Jesus clearly mentioned in Daniel 10:13?

Ask: Isn't Jesus as 'King of kings and Lord of lords' (Revelation 19:16) much higher in authority than one of a group of chief princes?

- 2) **Ask:** 'To which of the angels did God ever say 'thou art my son'?' (Hebrews 1:5)
- 3) The Bible mentions Michael the archangel five times as:
 1. 'Michael, one of the chief princes' (Daniel 10:13)
 2. 'Michael, your prince' (Daniel 10:21)
 3. 'Michael, the great prince' (Daniel 12:1)
 4. 'Michael the archangel . . . durst not bring against him (the devil) a railing accusation, but said The Lord rebuke thee' (Jude 9)
 5. 'Michael and his angels fought against the dragon' (Revelation 12:7)

Ask: Which of these verses state that Michael is Jesus Christ? None of them.

- 4) The WT claims support from I Thessalonians 4:16 'the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a commanding call, with an archangel's voice and with God's trumpet' (NWT)

Ask: If using an archangel's voice makes Jesus an archangel, then having God's trumpet

makes Jesus to be God.

Note: I Thessalonians 4:16 doesn't explicitly say that Jesus Himself speaks with the voice of the archangel. When Jesus comes from heaven to rapture the church from earth, He will be **accompanied** by Michael the archangel. It is the archangel's voice that shouts, not Jesus' voice. Jesus doesn't shout, but Michael does shout. This is like what happens at the end of the seven year tribulation, when Jesus returns 'from heaven with his mighty angels' (II Thessalonians 1:7).

If angels accompany Christ at the end of the 7 year tribulation, then clearly Michael will accompany Christ at the rapture before the 7 year tribulation, so Michael cannot be Jesus.

- 5) In Jude 9, Michael did not have the authority to rebuke Satan, but Jesus **did have the authority** as follows:

Jesus said 'Get thee hence, Satan' (Matthew 4:10) and

'Get thee behind me, Satan' (Mark 8:33)

Michael said to Satan, 'The **Lord** rebuke thee', proving that the only one with the authority to rebuke Satan is God. So, Matt. 4:10 proves that Jesus Christ is the **Lord God**.

Ask: Since Michael could not rebuke Satan in his own authority, but Jesus could and did rebuke Satan, doesn't that mean that Michael and Jesus are different persons?

- 6) **All the angels (Michael included)** are commanded to worship Christ. (Hebrews 1:6)
- 7) The writer of Hebrews asks several questions about angels and Jesus Christ, which prove them to be different persons:
 - i) 'Unto which of the angels said he at any time, thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee?' (Hebrews 1:5)
 - ii) 'To which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?' (Hebrews 1:13)
 - iii) 'Unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come (millennium)' (Hebrews 1:13).
 - iv) 'For verily, he took not on him the nature of angels' (Hebrews 2:16)
 - v) Does Michael sustain all things by the word of his power? (See Hebrews 1:3). No!
 - vi) Is it right to honour Michael the archangel just as you honour the Father? (John 5:23)
- 8) **Ask: Do good angels refuse worship?** (Certainly). When John fell down to worship the angel, the angel rebuked him, saying 'See thou do it not worship God'. (Rev 22:8,9). The Father commands **all** the angels (Michael included) to worship Christ. (Heb 1:6). The 'proskuneo' worship that angels refuse to accept but say to give to God, the Father commands this same 'proskuneo' worship to be given to the Son. Hence the Son cannot be an angel, but must be God. True Bible students soon discover that Jesus is no mere angel, but God. This lesson must be learnt so they may 'honour the Son just as they honour the Father'. (John 5:23 NWT).
- 9) Jesus Christ is **unchangeable**: 'Jesus Christ the same, yesterday and today and forever'. (Hebrews 13:8). The WT view of Jesus is that He was Michael who changed to become a man, and who at his resurrection changed back to Michael the archangel. The Watchtower Jesus is changeable. They have a false and different Jesus.
- 10) Jesus Christ **created all the angels**, including the thrones and principalities of which Michael is a chief prince of a principality. 'For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers'. (Colossians 1:16).

22. WITNESSING TO A JW

- 1) **Do work persistently with the JW.** Never give up unless they refuse further contact.
- 2) **Do try to answer every question they have.** If you don't know the answer to a question, say, 'That's a good question. I'm not sure what the answer is, but I'll do some research this week to find out the answer. Can we talk about this next week?'
- 3) **Do allow the JW to save face.** When you think the JW has lost the argument and is deflated, be loving and kind and say, 'We can get awfully uptight in these areas if we let ourselves. Let's just forget that you're a JW and I'm a Baptist (or whatever) and let's just think of ourselves as two people who want to know the whole truth. Right?' Disarming the situation in this way will help lower the defensive barriers and create an atmosphere where the JW may want to hear what you have to say.
- 4) **Don't lose your patience.** He must see that the WT has led him astray.
- 5) Pray for the **Holy Spirit** to speak to his heart and to fill you.

23. BLOOD TRANSFUSIONS

Watchtower Teaching WT forbids blood transfusions because of Genesis 9:4 'But flesh with the life thereof, which is the blood thereof, shall ye **not eat**'.

The WT teaches that a blood transfusion is the same as eating blood, because it resembles intravenous feeding. This doctrine was invented in 1944.

Bible Teaching and Historical facts:

- 1) Thousands of JWs and their children have **died** because they followed this WT error.
Ask: Would you really allow your baby to die because of this WT instruction?
- 2) Most JWs are unaware that their leaders have a history of making **medical prohibitions**, then later **changing their minds to allow them**. Examples include:
 - (i) **Vaccinations** were forbidden by the WT from 1931 to 1952. JWs had to refuse vaccinations because the WT taught that 'vaccination is a direct violation of the everlasting covenant that God made' (*Golden Age*, 4 Feb 1931, p 293).
Awake of 22 Aug 1965 admitted that vaccinations have caused a decrease in diseases (p.20)
Ask: How did the parents of children who died from not being vaccinated, feel when the WT reversed its view in 1952? How many of these children died needlessly?
 - (ii) **Organ transplants** were **allowed** by the WT up to 1967, but were **forbidden** in 1967 saying that 'organ transplants amounted to **cannibalism** and are not appropriate for Christians' (WT, 15 Nov 1967, p 702-4, and *Awake* 8 June 1968, p 21). Hence all organ transplants were forbidden for 13 years, during which time many JWs died needlessly. Then in 1980, the WT changed its mind to **allow** them saying that 'organ transplants are not necessarily cannibalistic' (WT, 15 March 1980, p 31).
 - (iii) **Blood plasma** and blood particles were **forbidden** to be used by JW haemophiliacs (*Awake*, 22 Feb 1975, p 30). Shortly after, the WT changed its mind to **permit** certain blood particles to be used, but failed to put it into print for 3 years until 15 June 1978, p 30 (WT). Only those haemophiliacs who phoned WT headquarters from 1975-78 discovered the change. Others were left to suffer and die.
Ask: How long before the WT changes its view on blood transfusions?
Ask: Why does the WT **keep changing its mind** on medical issues?
Ask: Is it right for an infallible prophet of God organisation (such as the WT claims to be) to keep changing its mind.

(iv) In 1984, they allowed for a **bone-marrow transplant**. Bone marrow is the very source of blood. However, they would disfellowship you for receiving a blood transfusion.

- 3) In Genesis 9:4 the context is God forbidding the **eating of animal blood** (as pagans did), not the **transfusion of human blood**. A blood transfusion is not intravenous feeding, because the blood so given **does not function as food**. When one gives a transfusion, it is not a loss of life, but a transference of life from one person to another. It replenishes and saves a life.

Ask: Since blood is not taken in as food to digest, but as life sustaining fluid, is it not clear that transfusion is different from eating?

- 4) Leviticus 3:17 'You must not eat **any fat** or **any blood** at all.' (NWT)

Ask: Why do WT leaders forbid blood transfusions but **allow the eating of fat**?

Why not forbid both? The WT is not consistently interpreting the Bible.

Leviticus 17:11,12: 'For the life of the flesh is in the blood'. Blood transfusion does not function as **food**, but simply transfers life from one person to another as an act of mercy.

Key: Leviticus 3:17 prohibits eating animal blood, not transfusing human blood.

Ask: Where is **loss of salvation** mentioned in Acts 15:9,11 for receiving a blood transfusion?

Key: Acts 15:28,29. A blood transfusion uses blood for the **same purpose that God intended**, (as a life-giving agent in the bloodstream). Drinking blood is not God's intended purpose for blood

Conclusion: Even though JWs try to support blood transfusions with Scripture, their **real reason for believing it is blind obedience to the WT**. If the WT organisation lifted its ban on blood transfusions, JWs would freely accept them if needed.

For the WT to admit they were wrong would cause too great a stir in their ranks.

Therefore any changes must be presented as 'new light' in order to make it appear that 'Jehovah' is making the changes, rather than a few men on the governing body.

24. THE CROSS

JWs deny that Jesus died on a cross, claiming that Jesus was nailed to a torture stake (an upright pole without any cross beam). In their NWT they translate 'cross' as 'torture stake'.

Definition: Cross in Greek is 'stauros' (4716) meaning 'a Roman cross consisting of a straight piece of wood erected in the earth, often with a transverse beam fastened across its top and another piece nearer the bottom on which the crucified persons feet were nailed.' (S. Zodhiates, Complete NT Word Study, p.1308). They illustrate Christ's death on a single pole with his arms straight above his head with a single nail pinning his hands to a torture stake.

Question: Did **one nail** fasten Jesus' hands above his head, or did **two nails** hold his hands to the opposite ends of a cross beam?

Answer:

- 1) 'But he (**Thomas**) said unto them, Except I shall see in his hands the print of the **nails**, and put my finger into the print of the **nails**, and thrust my hand into his side, I will not believe'. (John 20:25). Both the KJV and NWT have **plural 'nails'**, one used for each hand, totalling **2 nails**.

Ask: If Jesus was crucified on an upright stake, why does John 20:25 say that **nails** (plural) were used, instead of a single nail?

- 2) When Jesus spoke of **Peter's** future crucifixion, He said that Peter's hands would be stretched **forth (out)** as crucified on a crossbeam and **not above** his head on a pole.

‘But when you grow old you will stretch **out** your hands . . .’ (John 21:18,19 NWT).

Ask: From John 21:18,19 how can crucifixion be on a stake if the hands are outstretched?

3) **Matthew 27:37** proves a cross crucifixion instead of a stake crucifixion:

‘And set up **over his head** his accusation written, THIS IS JESUS THE KING OF THE JEWS’. If Jesus had died on a stake, it would have said, ‘over or **above his hands**’.

Ask: If Jesus was crucified on an upright stake, why does Matthew 27:37 say that a sign was placed **above Jesus’ head** instead of above Jesus’ **hands**?

4) **Early WT literature** stated that Christ was crucified on a **cross**. Examples include:

Creation, p.265, 336; *WT* 1 Jan 1891 p.1277; ‘beginning with its issue of 15 Oct. 1931 the WT no longer bore the cross and crown symbol on its cover’ (*1975 Yearbook*, p.148).

Ask: Does a true prophet of God change position on important topics like this?

5) The WT **ignores** the facts that:

a) the Greek word ‘stauros’ means a cross as well as a stake, and

b) Romans did execute prisoners on crosses: the **horizontal bar** was called the ‘**patibulum**’. Prisoners were made to carry the ‘patibulum’ to their place of execution’ (*Seneca, De Vita Beata* 19:3; *Epistola* 101:12; *Tacitus, Historicae*, Vol 4, p 3)

6) WT claims that the cross was not used until after 312 AD as the sign of crucifixion, but the cross has been discovered in excavations of Christian tombs much earlier than 312 AD

25. HOLY SPIRIT: Is He a PERSON or an ACTIVE FORCE? II Cor 3:17

Watchtower Teaching: The WT claims that the HS is neither a person nor God, but an impersonal ‘active force’ to achieve God’s will, like electricity or radio waves.

Bible Teaching: The Holy Spirit is fully God and has personality as He can be blasphemed. The Holy Spirit has the three attributes of personality, those being: mind, emotions and will. An ‘active force’ does not have personal attributes. The WT’s claim of the Holy Spirit being an active force is disproven if the Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit has mind, emotions & will.

1. The Holy Spirit has a mind.

(1) ‘He that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the **mind** of the Spirit’. (Romans 8:27). The word ‘mind’ means ‘way of thinking’, something which is only true of a person.

(2) ‘The things of God **knoweth** no man, but the Spirit of God.’ (I Corinthians 2:11).

Ask: How can the Holy Spirit **know** the things of God if the Spirit does not have a mind? A force does not know things. To know requires a mind.

(3) The Spirit **searcheth** all things’ (I Corinthians 2:10). The Greek word for ‘search’ means to thoroughly investigate a matter, something only a mind can do.

2) The Holy Spirit has emotions

(4) The Holy Spirit **loves**: ‘I beseech you..through the **love** of the Spirit’.(Rom 15:30 NWT).

(5) ‘**Grieve** not the Holy Spirit of God’. (Ephesians 4:30) The Holy Spirit is **grieved** (made sad) when believers sin. Grief is an emotion that one feels. A force can’t be grieved.

3) The Holy Spirit has a will. He performs personal acts.

(6) The Holy Spirit distributes spiritual gifts ‘to every man severally as he **will**.’(I Cor.12:11) The phrase ‘he wills’ in Greek means ‘a decision of the will after previous deliberation’. The Holy Spirit chooses which gifts each believer receives. A force has no such will, nor ability to make decisions.

(7) The Holy Spirit **commands**: ‘The Spirit **bade** me go with them’ (Acts 11:12)

(8) The Holy Spirit **forbids**:‘**forbidden** of the Holy Ghost to preach the word in Asia’.Acts 16:6

(9) The Holy Spirit **speaks**: ‘The Spirit **said** to Philip, Go near.’ (Acts 8:29)

‘The Holy Ghost **said**, separate me Barnabus and Saul’. (Acts 13:2)

‘The Spirit **speaketh** expressly’. (I Timothy 4:1).

Ask: How do you explain the WT view of the Holy Spirit being an impersonal force, with the Bible’s teaching that the Holy Spirit has a mind that can know, emotions that can feel love and grief, and a will to make decisions?

(10) The Holy Spirit **testifies**: ‘He shall **testify** of me’. (John 15:26).

The same Greek word for testify (or bear witness) used here, is also used of:

a) The **disciples** testifying about **Christ** in John 15:27.

b) **John the Baptist** bearing witness to the **truth** in John 5:33.

c) **God the Father** bore witness to **Cornelius’ (and Gentiles’)** conversion by giving them the Holy Spirit. (Acts 15:8)

Just as the disciples, John and God the Father (who are all persons) testified or bore witness, so the Holy Spirit bears witness about Christ. A force cannot bear witness, only a person can. (The Holy Spirit bears witness in heaven and on earth - I John 5:7,8)

(11) The Holy Spirit **intercedes** or **prays** for believers.‘The Spirit itself **makes intercession** for us with groanings’. (Romans 8:26). Just as Jesus Christ (a person) intercedes for believers (Romans 8:34; Hebrews 7:25), so the Holy Spirit (as a person) intercedes (same Greek word) for believers. A force cannot pray for another; only a person can pray

(12) The Holy Spirit **teaches** believers. (‘he shall **teach** you all things’. John 14:26)

(13) The Holy Spirit **hears**. ‘Whatsoever he shall **hear**, that shall he **speak**.’ (John 16:13)

(14) The Holy Spirit **shows** us things. ‘he...shall **show** it unto you’. (John 16:15)

(15) The Holy Spirit **restrains** sin. ‘My Spirit shall not always **strive** with man’(Genesis 6:3)

(16) The Holy Spirit can be **blasphemed**.‘he that shall **blaspheme** against the Holy Ghost’.Mk3:29 People cannot be blasphemed. We can only be slandered. Only God can be blasphemed. By Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit being blasphemed means we’ve proved the **Trinity**.

(a) God the **Father** can be blasphemed. (Revelation 13:6; 16:9)

(b) God the **Son** can be blasphemed. (Luke 22:65)

‘And many other things blasphemously they spake against him’.

(c) God the **Holy Spirit** can be blasphemed. (Matthew 12:31)

‘Blasphemy against the Holy Spirit shall not be forgiven unto men.’

(17) The Holy Spirit can be **lied to** (Acts 5:3). Ananias and Sapphira lied to the Holy Spirit.

Ask: Have you ever lied to electricity and asked electricity to forgive you?

(18) The Holy Spirit **cries** in our hearts, Abba, Father. (Galatians 4:6)

(19) The Holy Spirit **approves** some decisions:

‘It seemed good to the Holy Ghost and to us’. (Acts 15:28)

(20) The Holy Spirit **invites** people to be saved:‘The Spirit & the bride say **Come**’Rev 22:17

(21) The Holy Spirit **fills us** (Ephesians 5:18) just as God may fill us (Ephesians 3:19).

(22) The Holy Spirit **uses personal pronouns** to **describe Himself**: John 15:26; 16:13;(he): ‘The Holy Spirit said, Separate **me** Barnabus. . .’ (Acts 13:2).

The Holy Spirit considers Himself a person, not a personification.

Watchtower Objection:

The main reason the JW’s say that the Holy Spirit is an ‘active force’ is because the Greek word for ‘spirit’ (*pneuma*) is neuter.

Answer: This is faulty reasoning, because **1)**the gender of a word relates to the **grammatical form** of the word, not to its sex or **physical gender**. Because a word is

grammatically neuter does not mean that the object is an 'it' or of neuter sex.

(Source: *Elements of NT Greek*, J W Wenham, 1979, p.8).

For example, in Greek, 'children' is a neuter word, 'desert' is a feminine word, etc. and

2) In John 15:26 and 16:13, the neuter noun 'pneuma' is referred to by the **masculine pronoun 'ekeinos'** (1565=that one, masculine) recognising the Holy Spirit's masculine personality. '**He** (ekeinos) shall testify of me' (15:26); 'when **he** (ekeinos), the Spirit of truth shall come' (16:13). **Note:** 'ekeine' is feminine 'that one', and 'ekeino' is neuter).

- (23) The Holy Spirit **comforts** (Gk: parakletos) believers. John 14:16, 26; 15:26; 16:7. This same Greek word 'parakletos' (3875) is used of Christ who has personality in John 14:16 and I John 2:1. 'Another Comforter' (Gk: allos parakletos, John 14:16) means 'another of the same kind' as Christ, in contrast to 'heteros' (2087) meaning 'another of a different kind'. As Christ has Deity and Personality, so does the Holy Spirit. To comfort requires empathy, understanding, love, compassion and concern for another's well-being, all being attributes of personality.

Conclusion: Hence, the Holy Spirit is a person because **1) He has mind, emotions, & will** **2) Personal pronouns** are used of Him. **3) He performs personal acts.** **4) He associates with** the Father and Son in the Baptism formula, Apostolic benediction and as Church Administrator (I Cor. 12:4-6). **5) He can be personally mistreated** (tempted, lied to, grieved, resisted, insulted and blasphemed). The New Testament clearly shows the Holy Spirit to have a personality and to be God. ('Jehovah is the Spirit' II Cor. 3:17 NWT).

26. COUNSELLING THOSE WHO LEAVE THE WATCHTOWER

JWs are disfellowshipped for the following reasons:

1. Smoking
2. Working in defence departments or the military
3. Being employed by any other religious organisation
4. Taking a blood transfusion
5. Saluting the flag
6. Celebrating birthdays or holidays
7. Talking to disfellowshipped persons
8. Disagreeing with any WT doctrines or reading anti-Watchtower literature.

JWs admit that since 1918, they have been teaching a '**new gospel** not taught in centuries past', namely the **invisible return of Christ** and **setting up the kingdom in 1914** (WT, 1 May 1981, p.17). They therefore fall under the curse of Galatians 1:8,9 for preaching a false gospel and a false Jesus (II Corinthians 11:4). Those leaving the WT are faced with **FEAR of:**

1) **Being an Apostate.** If the WT can be shown to be a false religion, then being an apostate from a false religion would please God.

Leaving the WT is not leaving the 'doctrine of Christ' (II John 9). Instead, it is seeking to follow Christ who welcomes all who come to Him. (Matthew 11:28-30).

2) **Fear of losing all their friends** through disfellowshipping. It is painful to lose close friends and family members whom you love dearly. Being rejected and unable to speak to your close friends and family members is a strong reason for JWs to stay in the WT. Jesus promises those who leave the WT and follow Jesus will receive a hundredfold now, along with houses, brothers, sisters, mothers, children, lands and persecution and in the world to come eternal life (Mark 10:28-30). Christ will give you strength to endure this hardship. Ex-JWs can be a real source of comfort.

3) **Fear of dying at Armageddon.** If the JW sees the **error** of the WT concept of **Armageddon** and **God's judgment**, this will remove the fear of dying at Armageddon. Point him to **Christ's return to catch believers up to heaven before Armageddon.** (John 14:1-3; I Thessalonians 4:16-18; I Corinthians 15:51,52; Revelation 3:10). Point him to 'no condemnation to those who are in Christ Jesus (Romans 8:1,2), the security of salvation (John 10:28; I Peter 1:4,5) and the difference between the Judgment Seat of Christ of rewards for believers after the rapture (II Corinthians 5:10; I Corinthians 3:10-15) and the Great White Throne Judgment of unbelievers at the end of the Millennium (Rev. 20:10-15). Get them to understand the Second Coming. (Chapters 34-39, 74 of this book).

4) **Fear of loss of faith in God** being the **same as loss of faith in the WT organisation.** The ex-JW must understand that God does not work through man-made organisations, but deals with people individually and lovingly. Our faith is not in an organisation, but in Jesus Christ Himself. We must have a relationship with God rather than with the WT organisation. It is possible to lose faith in fellow Christians or in a church or in the WT organisation, without losing faith in Christ.

5) **Fear of Confusion over Doctrine.** Up till now the ex-JW has placed their trust in WT writings as truth. They have been forbidden to read other Christian books because they are not part of the WT. (Such books are quoted if it suits the WT's purpose). The ex-JW must learn what true Bible study is, by studying the Bible verse by verse and book by book. Read the Bible without reading WT publications. Learn to harmonise all the verses on a certain subject. Show above average love to such people.

27. WAR AND SELF-DEFENCE

JWs permit self-defence, but not for going to war. The **WT once allowed military service:** 'There is **no command in the Scriptures against military service.** It would be quite right to shoot, not to kill'. (*Watchtower*, 1 Aug 1898, p.231).

'There could be **nothing against our conscience** in going into the army' (*Watchtower*, 15 April 1903, p.120). The WT **later completely reversed their position:**

'It is only due to **conscience** that (JWs) have objected before draft boards to participating in the armed conflicts and defence programmes of worldly nations'. (*WT*, 1 Feb, 1951, p.73).

JWs allow for self-defence in *Awake*, 8 Sept 1975, p.27,28.

'It's okay to **protect one's family** in **self-defence** (Ephesians 5:25).

'One could also **defend one's spiritual brothers and sisters** from personal attack if necessary, based on John 15:13' (*Watchtower*, 1 June 1968, p.347).

JWs believe that:

- 1) **Self-defence** is proper;
- 2) Defending one's **family** is proper;
- 3) Defending one's **spiritual brothers and sisters** is proper
- 4) Defending one's **neighbour** who is being viciously attacked may be proper according to Luke 10:27 ('love your neighbour as yourself').

Conclusion Their position is contradictory. They believe in self-defence, but cannot draw a line Biblically between who is their neighbour and who isn't.

Note: Melchizedek blessed Abraham after returning from **slaughtering the kings** who had captured Lot (Genesis 14; Hebrews 7:1). Here God approves of Abraham (and hence us today in the NT) fighting a just war to defend our own people. God **doesn't rebuke Abraham** or **Melchizedek** here. This is an example of Watchtower stupidity. If Muslims conquered Australia they would slaughter every JW who didn't convert to Islam.

Ask: Would you JW's fight an enemy on your doorstep? (Yes). Then you admit it is right to fight him as he approaches our country and that it is right to have a military and police force.

Ask: Does the WT want us to disband our police force? (No). There is no real difference between police and the military. If everyone took their view, our country and freedom would have been lost to the Muslims & Dictators years ago. Freedom is won or lost on the battlefield. JW's want a free society to spread their heresies, but they don't want to fight for it. Others can. Muslims would have captured all of Europe in 732 AD if Charles Martel's army had not defeated them at the Battle of Tours.

Ask: Do you want the freedom to spread your views? (Yes). Then why shouldn't you help pay to preserve this freedom? User pays. If you use it, you pay for it. If you don't pay for what you use, you're a thief.

28. WATCHTOWER BRAINWASHING and THOUGHT CONTROL

The WT calls itself a 'society' (implying that each member has some say) to cover the truth that the real rulership is in the hands of a few men.

The WT convinces its followers that it is the only true religion by:

- i) Using half truths to explain their position
- ii) Misquoting secular authorities to support their position
- iii) Altering or covering up their own history of false prophecies or doctrinal reversals.

The WT society refers to itself as the 'mother'.

'If we are to walk in the light of truth, we must recognize not only Jehovah God as our father but his organisation as our "**mother**"' (WT, May 1957, p.274).

George Orwell's book '*1984*' describes a world power (like the WT) that juggles with truth and historical records in order to make themselves look as if they are always right.

The WT does this by:

- a) Preventing the average JW from accessing their past false predictions;
- b) Passing off the past as irrelevant. Whatever they taught in the past is not to be believed any longer. To believe previous views would be apostasy. They must gain victories over their memory.

For example:

- i) To know that the WT led people to believe that the end of the world would be in 1975, yet after its failure to happen, they denied their prediction was false. They believed this denial was truthful.
- ii) To forget that the WT predicted the end of the world in 1914 and later to change it to a prediction of Christ's invisible return in 1914 to cover up their false prediction.

The **WT's self-deception** is making up one lie to cover another lie.

When JW's won't give you a direct answer it is because:

- a) They cannot speak or think independently of the organisation.
- b) They fear being humiliated for independent thinking, disfellowshipped and separated from their family members and friends.

The Governing WT body commands JW's to stop short at the threshold of any dangerous thought.

- a) If the JW questions the system, it leads to
- b) Undermining his mental programming as doubts creep in, which leads to
- c) the JW thinking for himself.

The JW, due to fear of being chastised or humiliated, learns to kill his speculations and not allow his mind to move ahead or think independently of the organisation. The Governing Body will now represent his mind on all important matters. It's the only 'safe' way. A JW automatically learns to put aside disturbing thoughts, such as he might be asked at a door.

Ask: 'Why don't we examine the record of the Watchtower over the past 100 years?'

The JW will make an unconscious refusal to follow through on a logical argument initiated by others. While on the defensive, JW's will often misunderstand or draw a blank on the simplest of arguments. This is Orwell's 'Crimestop' initiated by 'Big Brother', known as protective stupidity or complete control over one's mental processes.

JW's believe that the WT is infallible. The WT defends its false predictions by:

- 1) Jehovah God was just testing you (WT, 15 Feb 1984, p.26)
 - 2) For a ship to get from A to B it must sometimes tack or zigzag (WT, 1 Dec 1981, p.27)
 - 3) 'We are not false prophets, because we admit our mistakes' (WT, 1 Nov. 1972, p.644).
- Yet, any false prophets who predict an end to the world are going to admit their mistake the next day. How else could they hold on to their followers?

It was good for them to be anxious for the end of the world, because it keeps them 'on the watch'. Orwell's '*1984*' says, 'The secret of rulership is to combine a belief in one's own infallibility with the power to learn from past mistakes'. (p.177).

The WT has taught millions of JW to

- 1) Think the opposite of what is true
- 2) Not to question the matter at all.

Conclusion: The ex-JW needs to discard the mental gymnastics the WT has taught him, and start reading and believing the Bible. A JW must see the Bible truths that:

- 1) Jesus said that everyone must be born again to enter the Kingdom of God. (John 3:3,7)
- 2) Cultivate a real relationship with Jesus Christ rather than the WT. (John 17:3 'know thee').
- 3) Jesus said not to listen to those who claim that Christ has returned secretly or invisibly (as WT says happened in 1914). Jesus said that He would come like lightning (Matthew 24:23-27) and every eye would see Him. (Revelation 1:7)
- 4) Jesus said that He is coming back to take believers home with Him (John 14:3; I Thess. 4:16,17).
- 5) The writer of Hebrews says that Jesus is definitely not an angel (Hebrews 1:4,5,6,8,10,13).
- 6) John says that Jesus is the very substance and nature of God (John 1:1; 5:18, 23; 8:58; 20:28; 8:24; 10:30; I John 5:7,8,20)

29. THE DIVINE NAME (John 17:6,26 'I have **declared** unto them **thy name**').

Jesus manifested or declared the Father's name by making known His nature, character, law, will, attributes and his plan of mercy. 'Declare' means to 'unfold, to lead, to show the way'.

Gradually, by Jesus' words and works, He revealed to people the **nature of God**, as they were able to bear it (John 16:12). The Father's **name** refers to His **nature**, as Jesus meant Saviour. The word 'name' is often used to describe the person and his reputation (I Tim.6:1,Rom. 2:24).

JW's say that we only get life through using 'Jehovah's' name. They quote verses such as:

- 1) 'Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will **get away safe**'. (Joel 2:32, NWT)
- 2) 'Our Father which art in heaven, hallowed be **thy name**'. (Matthew 6:9)
- 3) 'I have **manifested thy name** unto the men which thou gavest me.' (John 17:6)
- 4) 'And I have **declared** unto them **thy name**, and **wilt declare it**.' (John 17:26)

5) 'Father, glorify **thy name**. Then came a voice from heaven, saying, I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again'. (John 12:28)

Question 1: What is God's name?

Answer: Exodus 3:13,14,15: 'And Moses said unto God, Behold, when I come unto the children of Israel, and shall say unto them, The **God** of your fathers hath sent me unto you; and they shall say to me, **What is his name?** what shall I say unto them? And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM, and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, **I AM** hath sent me unto you.' (v.14) '**this is my name for ever**'. (v.15).

Hence, when Moses asks God what His name is, God tells Moses to tell Israel that His name is '**I AM**', and that this is God's name **forever**.

As a result, we should expect Jesus in the New Testament, when He stated that He **manifested or declared** God's name to His disciples, that Jesus would have declared the name '**I AM**' to his disciples. (John 17:6,26). Nowhere does the NT record Jesus declaring the name 'Jehovah' to anybody. He does declare God's name '**I AM**' to people.

Question 2: Where did Jesus use God's Name of '**I AM**' in His ministry?

Answer: Jesus made God's sacred name, '**I AM**' meaningful to His disciples as follows:

- 1) '**I am** the **bread of life**'. (John 6:35,41,48,51)
- 2) '**I am** the **light** of the world'. (John 8;12; 9:5)
- 3) '**I am** from above'. (John 8:23)
- 4) 'If ye **believe not** that **I am**, ye shall **die in your sins**'. (John 8:24)
- 5) 'When ye have **lifted up** the Son of man, then shall ye know that **I am**'. (John 8:28)
- 6) 'Before Abraham was, **I am**'. (John 8:58)
- 7) '**I am** the **door of the sheep**'. (John 10:7,9)
- 8) '**I am** the **good shepherd**'. (John 10:11,14)
- 9) '**I am** the **resurrection and the life**'. (John 11:25)
- 10) 'Where **I am** (*ego eimi*) there shall also my servant be'. (John 12:26, and John 14:3)
- 11) 'Now I tell you **before it come**, that, when it is come to pass, ye may believe that **I am** (*ego eimi*)'. (John 13:19). See Isaiah 41:23 where both Father and Son tell the future.
- 12) '**I am** (*ego eimi*) the **way**, the **truth** and the **life**: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me'. (John 14:6)
- 13) '**I am** (*ego eimi*) the **true vine**'. (John 15:1,5)
- 14) 'As soon then as he had said unto them **I am**, they **went backward**, and **fell to the ground**'. (John 18:6)
- 15) 'Jesus answered, **I have told you that I am** (*ego eimi*)'. (John 18:8).
- 16) '**I am** (*ego eimi*) the First and the last; I am he that liveth, and was dead'. (Rev. 1:17,18)
- 17) 'Then spake the Lord to Paul, . . . For **I am** (*ego eimi*) with thee . . .' (Acts 18:9,10)
- 18) Saul said: 'Who art thou Lord? And the Lord said, **I am** (*ego eimi*) **Jesus**, whom thou art persecuting'. (Acts 9:5 and 22:8)

We get eternal life through Jesus Christ's name:

- 1) 'But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing, ye might **have life** through **his name**'. John 21:31.
- 2) 'The **name** of Jesus Christ . . . neither is there salvation in any other: for there is **none other name** under heaven given among men, whereby **we must be saved**'. (Acts 4:10,12)
- 3) 'These things have I written unto you that believe on the **name of the Son of God**; that ye may know that ye have **eternal life**'. (I John 5:13)

We are called by Jesus Christ's Name, not by the name 'Jehovah':

- 1) Colossians 3:17 'Whatsoever ye do in **word or deed**, **do all in the name of the Lord Jesus**'.
- 2) Revelation 2:13 Jesus said to the Pergamos Christians: 'Thou **holdest fast my name**'. The Pergamos Christians held fast Jesus Christ's name, not the name 'Jehovah'.
- 3) Revelation 3:8 Jesus said to the Philadelphian Christians: 'Thou . . . hast kept my word, and **hast not denied my name**' (ie: Jesus' name). No mention of the name 'Jehovah' here.
- 4) II Timothy 2:19 'Let everyone that **nameth** the **name of Christ** depart from iniquity'.
- 5) Revelation 2:3 'For **my name's sake** hast laboured'. No mention of the name 'Jehovah'.
- 6) Isaiah 65:15 'The Lord God shall slay thee, and **call his servants by another name**'.

Question 3: What is that other name?

Answer: Christians. Acts 11:26 'The disciples were called **Christians** first in Antioch'.

7) Revelation 22:3,4 '**His name** shall be in their foreheads'. God & the Lamb have **one name**, as seen by 'God & the Lamb' (v.3) with **singular** '**his**' name.

The meaning of God's Name 'I AM' that Jesus Revealed

Jesus revealed the Father's Name by showing the disciples that:

- 1) Jesus was **all they needed**, as seen in the 'I AM' statements Jesus claimed to Himself.
- 2) The Father sent Jesus. Jesus was equally God. Jesus' words and works came from the Father.
- 3) 'I have manifested thy name' means 'I have revealed the nature of God'.

One of Jesus' ministries was to declare the Father's nature to mankind (John 1:18 'The only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, **he hath declared him**').

Conclusion:

JWs, by coming to grips with the basic teachings of God's Word (without WT publications) will be released from the Watchtower deception and be taught by the Holy Spirit (I John 2:27). Will you receive Christ as your Saviour and trust the Bible as God's Word, or will you trust the false prophet of the Watchtower? Leave the Watchtower today.

30. SEQUENCE OF VERSES TO DISCUSS and QUESTIONS TO ASK

Ask: May we make an appointment to ask some questions about the Bible?

Q1: Do you believe that Jesus is the 'I AM' God of Exodus 3:14 and John 8:24? If not, then John 8:24 says that you'll die in your sins. Do you want to die in your sins? (p.887).

Deity of Christ:

Q2: Do you honour the Son even as (KJV) or just as (NWT) you honour the Father? John 5:23 p.847

Q3: Why does NWT translate 'eimi' as 'am' 129 out of 130 NT times except where it proves Christ is God in John 8:58 where it translates it as '**have been**'? What Greek rule do they use? p.856

Q4: Why does the Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT) correctly translate John 8:58 (ego eimi) as 'I AM', which contradicts the NWT reading of 'I HAVE BEEN' (ego en)? (p.856).

Q5: Since Jehovah is called 'Mighty God' (in Isaiah 10:21 and Jeremiah 32:18) and Jesus is called 'Mighty God' in Isaiah 9:6, what does this tell you about Jesus? (If JW says Jesus is a lesser god, ask 'Is Jesus a true God or a false god?' If JW says 'a true god', ask 'How many true Gods are there?' (One.) Therefore Jesus is part of the Jehovah Godhead. (p.867).

Q6: Why does the Watchtower quote John 1:1 as 'the word was a God', which contradicts (1) the KIT; (2) 12 early church writers; (3) all Greek experts in the world; (4) The Emphatic Diaglott 'the logos was God'; and (5) Colwell's Rule of Greek grammar which explains why 'Theos' drops the article. Theos drops the article and is placed before the Greek verb (was) in order to identify the 'word' (logos) with the article as the subject. (p.850-5).

Q7: In Acts 7:59, was Stephen praying (talking to) Jesus when he said, 'Lord Jesus, receive my spirit'? (p.899).

Q8: Why does the KIT tell us to pray to Jesus in **John 14:14** ‘If ever anything you should ask me in the name of me this I shall do’? (p.899).

Q9: Why are 4 out of 17 **doxologies** to the Son? (p.900) 2 Peter 3:18; 1 Peter 4:11; 2 Tim 4:18.

Q10: In **Revelation 5:8-14**, why do the **redeemed** (v.8-10), the **angels** (v.11,12) and **all creatures** (v.13,14) **fall down and adore** the Lamb? Isn’t this worshipping Christ? (p.901).

Q11: If God and the Lamb have the one **throne**, one **face**, one **Name**; and they are the **same Temple**, the **same light of New Jerusalem**, and own the **same servants**, then doesn’t this make them the **One True God Jehovah**? (p.901, 896).

Q12: How many books that are **FOR the Trinity** have you read?

Q13: Why does the **WT forbid you reading books on the other side**? Don’t you think that its only fair and reasonable to read books against the WT, to get a balanced view of all the facts? Have they got something to hide that they are afraid of?

Q14: Why does the Watchtower **insert [other] four times** in **Colossians 1:16,17**, when ‘other’ is not in any New Testament manuscript? (p.840) Why does the NWT insert [other] in **Philippians 2:9**, when ‘other’ is not in any New Testament manuscript? (p.841).

Q16: Why does the WT **add [Son] in Acts 20:28** when ‘Son’ is not in any NT manuscript? p.843

Q17: Why does the Watchtower **change ‘Thy throne O God’** to ‘God is thy Throne’ in **Hebrews 1:8** thus ignoring the **Masoretic Hebrew text**, the **Septuagint**, Psalm 45:6 **parallelism** and **four early church writers** who all quote it as ‘Thy Throne O God’? (p.844-5)

Q18: Why does the Watchtower **translate ‘proskuneo’ as ‘worship’** when it applies to God, angels, devils, antichrist and images, but when ‘proskuneo’ is used for worshipping Christ as God, they translate it 16 times as ‘do obeisance’? Why? (p.847).

Q19: If angels refused worship, **why did Christ accept worship** 16 times? (p.847).

Q20: What does it say about Jesus’ true identity if He accepts the same ‘proskuneo’ worship as the Father? (p. 847).

Q21: Why does the Watchtower **change ‘worship him’ in the 1961 NWT edition of Hebrews 1:6** to ‘do obeisance’ in the 1971 NWT? (p.847).

Q22: Why does the Watchtower **break the Greek Granville-Sharp Rule in Titus 2:13** and II Peter 1:1 which prove Christ’s deity, but get it **right** everywhere else where Christ’s deity is not an issue? (p.847-8).

Q23: Why does the **KIT contradict the NWT in John 17:3** where the NWT translates a **verb** (*ginoskosi* = know) as a **noun** (take in knowledge)? (p.878).

Question: Is it right to mistranslate a verb as a noun?

Q24: If you reject the Trinity because you **can’t understand it**, then how do you explain how a **brown cow by eating green grass gives white milk**? (Proverbs 26:5).

Q25: In **Hebrews 9:27**, **why has the Watchtower added ‘for all time’** which occurs in no New Testament manuscripts? (p.872).

Question: Where are the Greek words ‘for all time’ in Hebrews 9:27? Show them to me.

Question: **Is it right to add words** to change a passage’s meaning, as the WT has done?

Q26: Why did the Watchtower **not include quotes by early church writers** to show that **they DID believe in the Trinity** and the **Deity of Christ**? (p.873).

Question: Why did the Watchtower **not give the source** of their false quotes of early church writers? (Lamson’s article of 1869 is not a true source. We need Volume and page numbers).

Q27: Doesn’t 2 Corinthians 3:17 ‘**Jehovah is the Spirit**’ (NWT) prove that **the Holy Spirit is Jehovah** God and hence the Deity of the Holy Spirit? Do you agree that if a=b then b=a? p.881

Q28: In **I John 5:7,8** if the Johannine comma is not part of the text (as NWT thinks), **why are there two masculine pronouns** (‘that’ and ‘these’) before and after the passage omitted by NWT? These masculine pronouns arise because they must agree with masculine Father and Word in v.7. Neuter Spirit, water and blood in v.8 don’t produce masculine pronouns.(p.881)

Q29: In **John 20:28**, if Thomas was just expressing surprise, wouldn’t this be **taking God’s name in vain**? Wouldn’t Jesus have rebuked him for this? (p.890). What did Thomas believe here? (That Jesus was his Lord and his God). KIT calls Jesus ‘the God of me’. (p.890).

Q30: Doesn’t ‘**HA-ADON**’ applied to Jesus in **Romans 10:9** prove that Jesus is the ‘True Lord’ of Isaiah 1:24? (NWT 1961 edition). (p.890).

Q31: Why did the NWT mistranslate **I Corinthians 15:47** as ‘the second **man** is from heaven’ (omitting Jesus as ‘**the Lord**’ from heaven), when no man hath ascended to heaven, and Jesus was not a man in heaven before His incarnation? (John 3:13). (p.891).

Q32: Why did the NWT omit ‘God’ in **I Timothy 3:16** and replace it with ‘He’ when ‘He’ is in no NT manuscript, and ‘God’ is in 300 Greek manuscripts, 3 versions & 20 writers? (p.892)

Q33: Since Jesus and Jehovah are each ‘the **first and the last**’ and ‘**alpha and omega**’, what does this tell you about who Jesus is? (p.894).

Q34: When did ‘**HA ADON**’ (the **True God**) **come to His temple**, if not Jesus in John 2:13-17 and Matthew 21:12,13 as **Malachi 3:1** and NWT 1961, p.1454 states? (p.895).

Q35: In **Micah 5:2**, Christ is ‘**QEDMAH**’ meaning ‘eternal’, & in **Habakkuk 1:12** Jehovah is ‘**QEDMAH**’. Doesn’t this mean that Jesus is Jehovah, as only Jehovah is eternal? p.895.

Q36: Doesn’t **Acts 16:31,34** prove Jesus is God by equating **belief on Christ** with **belief in God**? (p.907).

Q37: Have you looked up in the Bible all the **119 attributes of Christ** which are **also true of Jehovah God the Father** on pages 896-898? Christ must be Jehovah with these 119 attributes.

Q38: Who appeared as Jehovah God to the **nine Old Testament saints**, if ‘no man hath seen the Father’? (**John 6:46**) (p.899). It was Jehovah God the Son!

Q39: Have all your sins been removed? (No). Then you can’t enter God’s kingdom.

Q40: In **John 1:1**, “The word (Christ) was God”. Why does WT translate John 1:1 as “a god”, when in John 1:6, 12, 13 18 where “theos” also has no definite Greek article, they translate it as “God” every time? Don’t they want Christ to be God? Are they anti-Christ? Isaiah 44:8 says: “Is there **a God** beside me? yea, there is no God; **I know not any**.”(p.850).

Q41: Why does the WT insist that Christ is first created, when the meaning of “**firstborn**” (Gk: “prototokos in **Colossians 1:15**) means “**pre-eminent or ruler**”? David (Psalm 89:27), Ephraim (Genesis 41:50-52 and Jeremiah 31:9), Jacob (Exodus 4:22), and Solomon (I Chronicles 3:1,2) were all called “firstborn”, but none of them were born first. (p.860). Why? Because “firstborn” can mean “chief”, as with Christ, and not first created (Grk: protoktisis).

Q42: In **Isaiah 9:6**, Jesus Christ is called the “**everlasting Father**” meaning ‘Father of Eternity’. Only God can be the possessor, or Father of Eternity. Doesn’t this make Christ to be God? (p.867).

The Divine Name: (p.834,934).

Q43: Do you **do everything** (in word or deed) **in the name of Jesus Christ** as **Colossians 3:17** (NWT) commands or do you do all in the name of Jehovah? (p.935).

Q44: Since Jesus never addressed the Father as ‘**Jehovah**’ in the NT, why should we? (p.834)

Q45: If Jesus, the Holy Spirit and Paul **all address God as ‘Father’** and **never as ‘Jehovah’**, then shouldn’t we also call God ‘Father’, and not ‘Jehovah’? (p.834-5).

Q46: Which New Testament manuscripts have ‘Jehovah’ in them? (Answer: None)

Q47: Why does the NT always lift up Jesus' Name and not Jehovah's Name? (p.835-6)

Q48: What is God's name according to **Exodus 3:13-15**? (p.934).

Q49: Which name of God did Jesus declare (**John 17:26**) while He was on earth? ('I AM').

Q50: In whose name do we receive eternal life according to John 21:31; Acts 4:10,12; I John 5:13, Jesus or Jehovah? (p.935).

Q51: Why does the NWT not translate 'Lord' as 'Jehovah' in the New Testament when the New Testament verse is quoting an Old Testament verse referring to Jehovah in the case of **Hebrews 1:10; I Peter 3:15**; (p.837-8)? This breaks the WT's own rule p.11 KIT.

Q52: Does 'Lord' in **Romans 10:13** refer to Jesus Christ or to Jehovah? The Watchtower, 1 May 1978 p.12 says it refers to Jesus Christ. (p.906).

Christ's Resurrection body: (p.902).

Q53: Why does the Watchtower say Jesus did not resurrect bodily, when His resurrection body could eat, breathe, have feet, have hand wounds, touch people, and have flesh and bones?(p.902). Was He tricking them? Why would believers get a resurrection body & not Christ?

Q54: Didn't Jesus state that His body had been **literally raised from the dead** in **Luke 24:37,39**?

"They supposed that they had seen a spirit. Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones as ye see me have"(902).

Present Tense Salvation: (p.906).

Q55: Why does the Watchtower say we can't be sure of salvation ("Salvation to life involves time and is not completed when one becomes a Christian." *Make Sure of All Things*, p.332), when 12 scriptures on p.906 say we 'ARE SAVED' with a **present tense salvation**? (p.906) eg: 1 John 2:12 'your sins are forgiven'; 1 John 3:2 'Now are we the sons of God'; 1 Cor.1:18 'us which are saved', I John 2:25 'has promised us eternal life', etc.

Q56: In the light of present WT teachings, would you explain **John 5:24**? Ask: What is this everlasting life? How can you be sure of having it right now as this verse says? (To JW's no one has eternal life until after Christ's 1000 year rule.) What does it mean 'not come into judgment'? (To JW's judgment is physical death). What is this death that one passes out of? What life have they entered?

Q57: Do you have a mediator between you and God? (p.907) (No. WT,15 Aug.1989,p30,31).

The New Birth: (p.904).

Q58: To how many people is the new birth available, according to John 3:3 (NWT, anyone), I John 5:1 (NWT, everyone), I John 4:7 (NWT, everyone), II Corinthians 5:17 & I John 2:29?

Q59: Where does the Bible say that the number to be born again is **limited** to 144,000? It is unlimited to whosoever believes (p.905). I Peter 1:21,23.

Is Jesus Michael the Archangel?: (p.925).

Q60: If the Watchtower says Jesus is Michael the archangel, how can he also be 'the man Christ Jesus', now that He is in heaven? (**I Timothy 2:5**).

Q61: Why would God **command all the angels to worship a fellow-created angel?**(**Heb 1:6**). Isn't it wrong to worship a creature? (p.846,847,925,926).

Q62: If worshipping Jesus should be changed to 'do obeisance' (as WT thinks), why didn't God use the Greek word '*sebomai*' which means 'do obeisance'? (p.846).

Q63: In **Jude 9**, Michael did not have the authority to rebuke Satan (saying 'Jehovah rebuke thee' NWT) but Jesus DID have this authority to rebuke Satan in Matthew 4:10 and Mark 8:33. What does this tell you about who Jesus is? (The Lord God Jehovah). (p.925-6).

Q64: To which of the angels did God ever say, 'Thou art my Son'? (Hebrews 1:5). (p.925).

Q65: Watchtower False Prophecies: (p.908).

1) Do you agree that a true prophet of God gives prophecies coming true **100%** of the time, while false prophets give prophecies which don't always come true. (Deut. 18:20-22)?

2) Has the Watchtower ever claimed to be **God's prophet for today**? (Get JW to read WT, 1 April 1972, p.197 on p.910).

Ask: Does the WT claim that **Jehovah's Christian witnesses** are **God's prophet** today?

3) Can we agree that the WT prophet has **given prophecies** about events and dates in the future? (Ask 9 questions on pp.909-913).

4) Applying Moses' test to see if the WT is a true or false prophet, **what was supposed to happen** according to the WT in 1874, 1914, 1918, 1925 and 1975?

Question: With judgment day honesty, did any of these prophecies fail to come true?

Answer: All of them failed. They were all false prophecies.

Question: What verdict did Moses and Jesus tell us to pass on prophets such as the WT? (WT is a false prophet, is not God's organisation and does not speak in Jehovah's name.)

We must side with Moses and Jesus in rejecting the WT as a false prophet. Will you?

Q66: Why did the WT **change its view** on **vaccination, organ transplants, Christmas, the Cross**, on who **Jesus and Michael** are, **worshipping Christ, military service, and deferring marriage**? (pp.915-6).

Q67: Why did the WT prediction of Armageddon in **1975** fail to happen?(15 Aug 1968)p.912.

Q68: Do you agree with the WT command that when one discovers a false prophet, then 'people should **no longer trust** them as safe guides'? (WT, 15 May 1930, p.154) (p.919).

The 144,000: (p.919).

Q69: How do you know the 144,000 was **completed in 1935**? (p.920).

Q70: Why would 144,000 be literal, but 12,000 from each tribe be figurative? (12 x 12,000 figurative ⊕ 144,000 literal). (p.921-2).

Q71: Why does the WT ignore 13 scriptures which say believers go to heaven? (p.921).

Q72: Doesn't '**ONE FLOCK**' (**John 10:16** NWT) refute the WT idea of 'two flocks', one in heaven and the other on earth? (p.921).

Q73: In **Revelation 19:1** (NWT), where is the great crowd? (in heaven. WT says 'on earth' p.923).

Blood Transfusions: (p.927).

Q74: Why did the WT **change its mind** from forbidding **vaccinations, organ transplants, blood plasma and bone marrow transplants**, to allowing them? (p.927).

Q75: How did the **parents of children who died from not being vaccinated**, feel when the WT reversed its view in 1952? How many children died needlessly? (p.927).

Q76: Why does the WT forbid blood transfusion but allow eating of fat.They disobey Lev 3:17 **The Cross:** (p.928).

Q77: Did **one nail** fasten Jesus's hands **above** his head or did **two nails** hold his hands on the opposite sides of a cross beam (Latin: *patibulum*)? (p.928).

Q78: **How many nails were in Jesus' hands** according to **John 20:25**? (p.928).

Q79: If Jesus was crucified on an upright stake, why does **Matthew 27:37** say that a sign was placed **above Jesus HEAD**, instead of **above Jesus' HANDS**? (p.928).

Q80: Why did the WT **change its mind** on Jesus dying on a cross to Jesus dying on a stake in 1931? (p.928).**Question:** Does a true prophet of God change its mind on such issues?

Q81: Why does the WT say the Holy Spirit is not a person but an active force, when the Holy Spirit has **23 attributes of personality**? (pp.929-30).

Q82: If Jehovah is the **only Saviour**, is the **only judge** and has **glory possessed only by himself**, yet **Christ** also has these attributes, what does this tell us about who Jesus is? p.896.

Heaven: (p.35,36,921).

Q83: Why does the WT ignore the following verses in saying that we don't go to **heaven**? Colossians 1:5; I Peter 1:4 'reserved in heaven for you'; Rev 6:9; 19:1; Matthew 6:20; John 12:26; John 14:3; Hebrews 3:1; 10:34 ;11:16; 12:1; II Cor 5:1,8; Phil. 1:23. (p.35,36).

31. THE TRINITY OF THE GODHEAD SEEN IN NATURE.

Question: How is the Trinity of the Godhead seen in nature as in Romans 1:20 'for the invisible things of him from the **creation of the world** are **clearly seen**, being understood by the **things that are made**, even his eternal **power** and **Godhead**; so that they are without excuse.

Answer: a) We see God's eternal **power** in earthquakes, volcanoes, wind, millions of stars, galaxies, waves, floods, lightning, sun, moon, nuclear bombs, etc.

b) We see the **Trinity of the Godhead** with so many things coming in 'threes', reminding us of Father, Son, Holy Spirit, all three members of the creator Godhead. Examples include:

1) **The Physical Universe: Space, mass, time.**

2) **Space:** 3 dimensions of space are: length, breadth, height.

3) **Mass:** 3 phases of matter are: solid, liquid, gas.

4) **Time:** 3 tenses of time are: past, present, future.

5) **Light:** 3 directions of light wave oscillation are: horizontal, vertical, back and forward.

6) **Colours:** 3 primary colours of light are: red, blue, yellow.

7) **Kingdoms:** 3 Kingdoms are: Animal, vegetable, mineral.

8) **Animal:** 3 main kinds of Animal are: fish, bird, land animals.

9) **Minerals:** 3 main kinds of Minerals are: igneous, sedimentary, metamorphic.

10) **Heavens:** 3 heavens are: atmosphere, space, God's throne.

11) **Man:** 3 components of Man are: body, soul (personality), spirit. (I Thess. 5:23).

12) **Divine institutions:** 3 Divine institutions are: marriage, human government, church.

13) **Musical notes:** 3 notes make up a musical chord.

14) **Sub-atomic particles:** 3 main sub-atomic particles are: proton, electron, neutron,.

15) **Mankind:** 3 divisions of the human race: Jew, Gentile, Church of God. (I Cor.10:32).

32. QUESTIONS TO ASK TO REFUTE JW OBJECTIONS

1. **Psalm 110:1** 'The Lord (*Jehovah*) said to my Lord (*Adonai*) sit thou . . .' (p.869).

Ask: Did you know that Adonai (Lord) used of Jesus in Psalm 110:1 is also used of the Father in Exodus 23:17, Deuteronomy 10:17, Joshua 3:11?

2. **Proverbs 8:22,23** 'I was set up from everlasting' (p.860).

Ask: Where is Jesus Christ mentioned in this passage? Was there a time when God had no wisdom? Is Christ a woman who cries in the streets? (Proverbs 8:1; 1:20,21)

3. **Isaiah 9:6** **Is Jesus a 'Mighty God' or 'Jehovah God'?** (p.867).

Ask: Since Jehovah is called 'mighty God' in Isaiah 10:21;and Jeremiah 32:18, just as Jesus is called 'Mighty God' (Isaiah 9:6), doesn't this mean that the Watchtower is wrong in saying that Jesus as Mighty God means He is a lesser deity?

Ask: If both Jesus and Jehovah are 'Mighty God', then what does this tell you about Jesus' divine nature?

4. **Mark 10:17,18** 'Why callest thou me good? There is none good but one, that is, God' p872

Ask: Where in the text does Jesus explicitly say that He is not God? Jesus did claim to be good and hence God in John 10:14: 'I am the good shepherd'.

5. **Mark 13:32** 'But of that day hour knoweth no man, no not the angels . . . neither the Son, but the Father' (p.866).

Christ's one person possessed the attributes of both divine and human natures. Christ

sometimes operated as a man and sometimes operated as God, eg: Christ in His human nature knew hunger, weariness, and sleepiness, but in His divine nature was **omniscient, omnipresent** and **omnipotent**.

Key: In Christ's divine nature, He is just as omniscient as the Father, as the following verses state:

'Lord thou **knowest all things**', (John 21:17)

'Now are we sure that thou **knowest all things**' (John 16:30)

'In whom are hid **all the treasures** of **wisdom and knowledge**' (Colossians 2:3).

Ask: Can anyone other than God be omniscient? (No).

Ask: Since Christ had both a human and a divine nature, and since He used His omniscience often, can you see that Jesus was speaking from His **human nature** when He said that He didn't know the day or hour of His return?

6. **John 3:16** 'He gave His only begotten Son'. (p.862).

Ask: If 'son of' meant 'sameness of nature and equality of being' among the ancients, as historical records clearly show, then what does this tell us about the meaning of the phrase 'Son of God'?

Ask: What did Jesus mean when He said of Himself: 'All things that the Father hath are mine'. (John 16:15)? (Answer: Jesus is alone all that God is.)

7. **John 4:23** 'True worshippers shall worship the Father...' (p.871).

Do we worship the Father only?

Ask: Do you give worshipful honour to the Son **just as** you do to the Father? (John 5:23) If no, then your worship is in vain and you are not honouring the Father.

Ask: Why did the Watchtower (1880) say 'to worship Christ in any form cannot be wrong', while later Watchtower editions say we should not worship Christ?

Ask: What rule of Greek grammar does the Watchtower use to translate '*proskuneo*' as 'worship' when it refers to the Father (21 times), devils (14 times), angels (2 times), but as '**obeisance**' when it refers to **Christ** (16 times)?

Ask: Why did Paul refuse worship (Acts 14:11), the angel refuse worship (Revelation 22:8,9) but Jesus never refused worship?

8. **John 14:28** 'The Father is greater (Greek: *meizon*) than I' (p.865).

Jesus did not say that 'the Father is **better** (Greek: *kreitton*) than I'.

Greater refers to the Father's greater **position** (in heaven), not to a greater **nature**.

Ask: Do you agree that a president is **greater in position** but not **better in nature** than his people?

Ask: In view of **greater** (meaning higher in position) and **better** (meaning higher in nature - see Hebrews 1:4), is it not clear that in John 14:28 Jesus is speaking of the Father's **temporary higher position** and **not by higher nature** than Jesus? (p.865).

9. **John 17:3** 'know thee the only true God' (p.868).

The Watchtower says that, because the Father is called 'the only true God', then Jesus cannot be the true God.

Ask: The context is Jesus as a man, praying the great high priestly prayer to the Father, and as such it was proper for the **man Christ Jesus** to call the Father 'the only true God'. Christ would **not have said this** if it was spoken from the viewpoint of His **deity**.

Ask: Since Jesus being called our only Lord (Jude 4 *NWT*) does not exclude the Father (Matthew 11:25) and the Holy Spirit from being called Lord, why must the Father being called 'the only true God' exclude the Son and Holy Spirit from being called God?

Ask: According to John 17:3, how many true Gods are there? (One).

Do you agree that whatever is not true is false?

If there is only one true God, all other gods must be false gods.

In John 1:1 *NWT* says that Jesus is a god, right? Is Jesus a true God or a false god?

He cannot be a false god, can He, since that would mean John was guilty of falsely honouring Jesus as a god. Therefore Jesus must be a true God.

But Jehovah is the only true God. Therefore Jesus must be Jehovah.

10. **John 20:17** ‘I ascend to . . . **My God and your God**’ (p.864).

It is in Christ’s humanity that He acknowledged the Father as ‘my God’.

Ask: Since man’s proper duties are to worship God, pray to God and address God as ‘my Father’ and ‘my God’, can you see that it was perfectly correct for Jesus (speaking as a man) to address God as ‘my Father’ and ‘my God’. (p.864).

11. **I Corinthians 8:6** ‘**One God the Father . . . and one Lord Jesus Christ**’ (p.864).

Ask: Do you know that the Father is called Lord of heaven and earth? (Matthew 11:25).

Ask: Can you see that, since Jesus as one Lord does not mean that the Father is not Lord, then by the same logic, the Father as ‘one God’ does not mean that Jesus is not God? (p.864).

12. **I Corinthians 11:3** ‘The head of Christ is God’ (p.858).

Ask: Are women inferior in nature to men because men exercise headship over women?

If no, why does WT teach that the Father’s headship over Christ means that Christ is inferior in nature to the Father? (p.858)

13. **I Corinthians 15:28** ‘Then shall the **Son** also be **subject** unto Him’ (p.863).

Jesus’ humanity will always be in subjection to the Father.

Ask: Do you submit to the police? (Yes) Are you of inferior nature to the police? (No)

So why should Christ be of inferior nature to the Father, just because He submits to Him?

Ask: ‘Of His (Christ’s) Kingdom there shall be no end’ (Luke 1:38). Can you see that **Christ as man**, will hand over the administration of the earthly kingdom to God the Father, so that then **Christ as God**, will reign forever with the **Father** and the **Holy Spirit**, as the **Triune God** and **no longer reign through the man Christ Jesus?** (p.863).

14. **Colossians 1:15** ‘the **firstborn (prototokos)** of every creature’. (p.860).

Ask: Why didn’t Paul use the term ‘first created’ (*protoktisis*) here if he meant that Christ was the first one created by Jehovah? (p.860)

Ask: What does ‘firstborn’ mean? (p.860)

Ask: What does Psalm 89:27 mean by calling David ‘firstborn’, when he was the last born son? (p.861)

15. **Revelation 3:14** ‘The Beginning (*Arche*) of the Creation of God’. (p.859).

Ask: Since ‘*Arche*’ used of God Almighty (in Rev.21:6 and 22:13) does not mean that God had a created beginning, why do you insist that, when ‘*Arche*’ is used of Christ, it means that Christ had a created beginning? (eg: Archbishop, architect, beginner).

33. Places where KIT gives the right reading, contradicting NWT

The upper cutout is from the Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT), and the lower cutout is from The Emphatic Diaglott NT. Both are Watchtower approved and published.

1. **John 1:1** ‘God was the word’

Why does **KIT contradict NWT** to give right reading: ‘God was the word’? (p 854)

2. **John 8:58** ‘Before Abraham was, I am’

Why does **KIT give the right reading** ‘I am’, contradicting NWT ‘I have been’? (p 857)

3. **John 14:14**

KIT tells us to pray to Jesus (p.899).

4. **John 17:3**

Why does the KIT give the right reading ‘**know** you (verb)’ contradicting the NWT ‘taking in **knowledge** (noun)’? (p.868).

5. **Acts 20:28**

Where is ‘Son’ in the Greek? (p.843).

6. **Philippians 2:9 and Colossians 1:16,17**

Where is 'other'? (pp 841, 840, 886)

7. **I Timothy 3:16**

No manuscript has 'He was manifest in the flesh'. But 323 manuscripts have 'God was manifest in the flesh'. (p.804,892).

8. **Hebrews 1:6** Why did the Watchtower change 'worship' (NWT 1961 edition) to 'do obeisance' (NWT 1985 edition)? (p.846).

9. **Hebrews 1:8**

Why does NWT reverse the word order, contradicting the KIT 'Thy throne O God'?p.844

10. **Hebrews 9:27**

Where is 'for all time'? (p 872)

11. **I Peter 3:15**

KIT says to sanctify Christ as Jehovah God (footnote), quoting Isaiah 8:13. (p.837).

12. **1 John 5:7,8**

13. **Revelation 19:1**

Where is the great crowd? KIT and NWT say that they are in heaven. (p.923).

14. Did you know that **Clement of Alexandria** (153-217 AD), **Tertullian** (200-250 AD), **Hippolytus** (170 AD) & **Origen** (185-284 AD) believed in the Trinity and Deity of Christ? (p.875)

a) **Clement**: Volume 2, p.468, 173

b) **Tertullian**: Volume 3, p.598,606,607

e) **Thaumaturgus**: (205-265 AD), Vol.6, p.42,45.
15.

c) **Hippolytus**: Volume 5, p.228

d) **Origen**: Volume 4, p.255,258.

Archaeology as proof of the Bible

And the noted Dr J.O. Kinnaman said: “Of the hundreds of thousands of artifacts found by the archaeologists, not one has ever been discovered that contradicts or denies one word, phrase, clause, or sentence of the Bible, but always confirms and verifies the facts of the Biblical record.”

Nelson Gueck: “It may be dated categorically that no archaeological discovery has ever contravened a Biblical reference.”

Albright: “The excessive scepticism shown toward the Bible by important historical schools of the 18th and 19th centuries has been progressively discredited.”

Willmington gives 83 examples of archaeology proving major Bible events. Some are:

1. **CREATION.**

Gen. 1:1 “In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth”. Between 1848-76 tablets with the 1st extra-Biblical account of creation were discovered from the library of King Ashurbanipal of Assyria (669-626 BC) and are written on seven day tablets, stating: There are “seven” tablets (or epochs) of creation- “in the beginning” a “primeval abyss”- a “chaos of waters” called “the deep”- the gods “formed all things”- made the “upper and lower firmaments”- “established the heavens and the earth”- the 4th day “ordained the stars”- “made the grass and the green herbs to grow”- “the beasts of the field and the cattle and all living things”- on the 6th day “formed man out of the dust of the ground”- “they became living creatures”- “man with wife they dwelt”- “companions they were”- “in a garden was their dwelling”- “clothing they knew not”- the “7th” day was appointed a “holy day”, and “to cease from all business commanded”.

Both Bible and Assyrian accounts resemble: i) an original chaos and darkness ii) similar order of events: light, atmosphere, dry land, stars, man, God resting

2. **ORIGINAL MONOTHEISM.** Romans 1:21-23

The 2 earliest civilizations were Egypt and Sumeria. Both were originally monotheistic, not worshipping many gods.

Sayce announced (1898) that he had discovered, on three separate tablets in the British Museum, of the time of Hammurabi, the words “Jahwe (Jehovah) is God”.

3. **GARDEN OF EDEN.** Gen. 2:8-17

ARCHAEOLOGICAL NOTE: Eridu, Traditional Garden of Eden

The particular spot which tradition has fixed as the site of the Garden of Eden is a group of mounds, twelve miles south of Ur, known as Eridu (Abu Sharem). It was the home of “Adapa”, the Babylonian Adam (see page 68). The Weld Prism says the first two kings in history reigned at Eridu (see page 71).

Ancient Babylonian inscriptions say, “Near Eridu was a garden, in which was a mysterious Sacred Tree, a Tree of life, planted by the gods, whose roots were deep, while its branches reached to heaven, protected by guardian spirits, and no man enters”.

The ruins of Eridu were excavated by Hall and Thompson, of the British Museum (1918-19). They found indications that it had been a prosperous city, revered as the Original Home of Man.

4. **FALL OF MAN.** Gen. 3:6

i) The Fall is described in King Ashurbanipal of Assyria library, 700 BC, and in Amenhotep III of Egypt, 1400 BC. Adapa is Adam.

ii) In 1932, Speiser discovered a Temptation Clay Seal, showing a fruit tree. A woman is picking fruit from the tree. Behind her is a serpent, whispering to her. In British museum.

iii) In 1932, Speiser discovered an “Adam and Eve” seal at Nineveh. One inch in diameter and dated 3500 BC. A naked man and woman walking downcast, followed by a serpent.

iv) Cherubim guarding tree of life (3:24), resemble the winged lioned statues guarding ancient temples at Babylon. The Sphinx of Egypt resembles the Cherubim.

5. **TEN LONG-LIVED PRE-FLOOD KINGS** Gen. 5

Weld prism, 2170 BC, gives ten long-lived pre-flood kings, agreeing well with the ten pre-flood Patriarchs from Adam to Noah in Gen. 5:1-32.

6. **NOAH’S FLOOD.** Gen. 6:13,14 and Gen.6-9

In 1853, H. Rassman unearthed some Babylonian flood tablets in Nineveh, taken from the Assyrian king Ashurbanipal’s library (669-626 BC). The eleventh book in this discovery was the Epic of Gilgamesh. Gilgamesh was a legendary Mesopotamian king who set out on a journey to find his ancestor Utnapishtim, from whom he hoped to discover the secret of eternal life. He finally found him. Utnapishtim told Gilgamesh he had once lived in a land called Shuruppak and had been a worshipper of the tree god Ea. He then related the story of the flood and his escape from it. His story may be summarized as follows:

“The assembly of the gods decided to send a deluge. They said, ‘on the sinner let his sin rest.

O man of Shuruppak, build a ship, save your life. Construct it with six stories, each with seven parts. Smear it with bitumen inside and outside. Launch it upon the ocean. Take into the ship seed of life of every kind.’ So I built it. With all that I had I loaded it, with silver, gold, and all living things that I had. I embarked upon the ship with my family and kindred. I closed the door. The appointed time arrived. I observed the appearance of the day. It was terrible. All light was turned to darkness. The rains poured down. The storm raged like a battle charge on mankind. The boat trembled. The gods wept. I looked out upon the sea. All mankind was turned to clay, like logs floating about. The tempest ceased. The flood was over. The ship grounded of Mt. Zazir. On the seventh day, I sent out a dove; it returned. I sent out a swallow; it returned. I sent out a raven; it alighted; it waded about; it croaked; it did not return. I disembarked. I appointed a sacrifice. The gods smelled the sweet savour. They said, ‘Let it be done no more.’ “ (Suggested by *Halley’s Handbook*, p. 76).

“And God said unto Noah, the end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and behold, I will destroy them with the earth. Make thee an ark of gopher wood; rooms shalt thou make in the ark, and shalt pitch it within and without with pitch” (Gen. 6:13,14).

Other Traditions

Egyptians had a legend that the gods at one time purified the earth by a great Flood, from which only a few shepherds escaped.

Greek tradition: Deucalion, warned that the gods were going to bring a flood upon the earth, for its great wickedness, built an ark, which rested on Mt. Parnassus. A dove was sent out twice.

Hindu tradition: Manu, warned, built a ship, in which he alone escaped from a Deluge which destroyed all creatures.

Chinese tradition: Fa-He, founder of Chinese civilization, is represented as having escaped from a Flood sent because man had rebelled against heaven, and his wife, three sons and three daughters.

England: Druids had a legend that the world had been re-peopled from a righteous patriarch who had been saved in a strong ship from a Flood sent to destroy man for his wickedness.

Polynesians have stories of a Flood from which eight escaped.

Mexicans: One man, his wife and children, were saved in a ship from a Flood which overwhelmed the earth.

Peruvians: One man and one woman were saved in a box that floated on the flood waters.

American Indians: Various legends, in which one, three or eight persons were saved in a Boat above the waters on a high mountain.

Greenland: The earth once tilted over, and all men were drowned, except one man and one woman, who re-peopled the earth. (see International Standard Bible Encyclopedia).

Universality of the Tradition

Babylonians, Assyrians, Egyptians, Persians, Hindus, Greeks, Chinese, Phrygians, Fiji islanders, Esquimaux, Aboriginal Americans, Indians, Brazilians, Peruvians, and indeed every branch of the whole human race, Semitic, Aryan, Turanian- have traditions of a Great Deluge that destroyed all mankind, except one family, and which impressed itself indelibly on the memory of the ancestors of all these races before they separated. "All these myths are intelligible only on the supposition that some such event did actually occur. Such a universal belief, not springing from some instinctive principle of our nature, must be based on an Historical Fact."

7. DESTRUCTION OF SODOM AND GOMORRAH.

Consider: a) Existence of these cities

Before 1968 there was no reference outside the Bible to Sodom and Gomorrah. Giovanni Pettinato, a young graduate from Rome University, discovered the ancient city of Ebla, along with thousands of clay tablets. Some tablets mentioned five sister "cities of the plain" (Gen. 14:2): Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, Zeboiim, Zoar (Bela).

One tablet records a receipt for grain shipped between Ebla and Sodom.

b) Fertile Area around Sodom is supported by five oases. Pottery and flint were found dating from 2500- 2000 BC, where civilization ended abruptly.

c) Destruction: Flammable asphalt and sulphur odours fill the area.

"If we take a rowing boat across the 'Salt Sea' to the southernmost point we shall see, if the sun is shining in the right direction, something quite fantastic: some distance from the shore, and clearly visible under the surface of the water, stretch the outlines of forests which extraordinarily high salt content of the Dead Sea has kept in preservation. The trunks and roots in the shimmering green must be very ancient indeed. Once upon a time, when they were in blossom and green foliage covered their twigs and branches, perhaps the flocks of Lot grazed under their shadow." (Werner Keller, *The Bible As History*, pp. 94, 98).

Salt, sulphur and bitumen about 2056 BC were mangled maybe by an earthquake. The violent explosion hurled the red hot mixture into the air, so that it literally rained fire and brimstone(sulphur) over the whole plain. There are many pillars of salt at the South end of the Dead Sea, which have borne the name "Lot's Wife". The whole region exactly dovetails the Bible story of Sodom and Gomorrah.

8. The Tower of Babel (Gen. 11:1-9)

There are over 24 ancient temple towers called Ziggurats in Southern Mesopotamia.

Archaeological evidence suggests that the Tower of Babel was in reality a building given over to astrology, or the heathen worship of the heavens. Among the ruins of ancient Babylon is a building 153 feet high with a 400-foot base. It was constructed of dried bricks in seven stages, to correspond with the known planets to which they were dedicated. The lowermost was black, the colour of Saturn, the next orange, for Jupiter, the third red, for Mars, and so

on. These stages were surmounted by a lofty tower, on the summit of which were the signs of the Zodiac.

9. The Hittite Empire (Gen. 15:20)

a) Hittites are mentioned 47 times in the Old Testament, e.g. Uriah (II Samuel 11:3), Esau married a Hittite (Gen. 26:34)

b) Before the nineteenth century, the Bible was the only record of Hittites, causing critics to sneer at the Bible.

c) But, in 1906, Hugo Winkler discovered Boghaz- Keul, an Hittite capital with over 10 000 clay tablets. These confirmed Joshua's description of the Western fertile crescent as the land of the Hittites (Josh. 1:4).

They discovered iron smelting, but were destroyed in 717 BC by Assyria.

10. Death of the firstborn in Egypt (Ex. 12:29)

Amenhotep II, the Pharaoh of the ten Plagues, firstborn son did not succeed him after his death, because his firstborn son was killed in the tenth plague (Ex. 12:29).

"And it came to pass, that at midnight the Lord smote all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh who sat on his throne unto the firstborn of the captive who was in the dungeon; and all the firstborn of cattle" (12:29) 11. Destruction of Pharaoh and his armies in the Red Sea Ex. 14

The tomb of Amenhotep II was never finished, as he was drowned as he chased the Israelites into the Red Sea (Exodus 15:19).

"... and the Lord overthrew the Egyptians in the midst of the sea. And the waters returned and covered the chariots, and the horsemen, and all the host of Pharaoh that came into the sea after them; there remained not so much as one of them" (14:27, 28).

12. Parting of the Jordan River (Joshua 3)

In 1927 the Jordan was stopped for 21 hours. Bible miracles are also miracles of timing.

"And it shall come to pass, as soon as the soles of the feet of the priests who bear the ark of the Lord... shall rest in the waters of the Jordan, that the waters... shall be cut off... and they shall stand in one heap" (3:13)

"... the waters which came down from above stood and rose up in one heap very far from the city Adam..." (3:16)

We read that the waters of Jordan were blocked from Adam (the modern Damieh), about sixteen miles north of Jericho. Three times in relatively modern history (1266, 1906, 1927) a landslide has blocked the Jordan's flow.

13. Joshua's invasion of Canaan

In 1896, 350 clay tablets were excavated at the Egyptian court in Amarna, known as the "AMARNA TABLETS". They contain letters written by Palestinian and Syrian cities to the two kings of Egypt who lived around 1400 BC, Amenhotep III and IV. They asked the Egyptians for help to repel a group of invading "HABIRU" people or HEBREWS. The name "Joshua" actually appears on one tablet.

14. The use of the HORNET in conquering Palestine

Josh. 24:12 "And I send the hornet before you, which drove them out before you, even the two kings of the Amorites; but not with thy sword or bow".

While Moses was 40 years in Midian, a powerful Egyptian Pharaoh (Thutmose III) invaded Canaan, overcoming the defenses of the Amorites and other nations. He was really helping prepare the way for Israel's conquest under Joshua by weakening those nations. Note: the personal coat of arms badge worn by Thutmose III himself was the HORNET.

God may have had this in mind in Ex. 23:28 and Deut. 7:20.

15. The invasion of Judah by Shishak, king of Egypt II Chron. 12:2-14

“In the fifth year of Rehoboam, Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem.. and took away the treasures..”

Shishak, founder of the 22nd dynasty. His gold-masked body was discovered at Tanis in 1938-39. His victory inscriptions found at Thebes list the towns taken in Judah and Israel.

16. Ahab's house of Ivory I Kings 22:39

“Now the rest of the acts of Ahab, and all that he did and the ivory house that he had made, and all the cities that he built...”

The ruins of this house were found in Samaria in 1908-10 by a Harvard University expedition. Its walls had been faced with ivory. There were thousands of pieces of the most exquisitely carved and inlaid panels, plaques, cabinets and couches.

17. The punishment of King Jehu II Kings 10:29-33

“But Jehu took no heed to walk in the law of the Lord God of Israel with all his heart...” (10:31). “In those days the Lord began to cut Israel short...”(10:32).

The Black Obelisk of Shalmaneser II found in 1845 by Layard in the palace at Nimrud shows a figure with marked Jewish features kneeling at the feet of the king and above it this inscription: “The tribute of Jehu, son(successor) of Omri, silver, gold, bowls of gold, chalices of gold, cups of gold, vases of gold, lead, sceptre for the king and spear-shafts I have received”.

18. King Uzziah of Judah's LEPER HOUSE II Chron. 26

“But when he was strong, his heart was lifted up to his destruction: for he trespassed against the Lord his God, and went into the temple of the Lord to burn incense upon the altar of incense”(26:16).

“And Uzziah the king was a leper unto the day of his death, and dwelt in a (separate) house, being a leper; for he was cut off from the house of the Lord...”(26:21).

In 1959 Professor Aharoni of Hebrew University discovered a Judean Palace two miles south of Jerusalem, on Rachel's hill on the road to Bethlehem. It was 250 feet by 150 feet square, surrounded by a casemated wall like that of King Ahab in Samaria, and had a triple gate in the style of Solomon's day. Three sides of the courtyard were surrounded by buildings, two sides residential and the third for stores. There was no doubt about the occupant of this magnificent but lonely outpost. They had excavated the palace of Uzziah the leper.

19. The historicity of Sargon (Isa. 20:1)

“In the year that Tartan came unto Ashdod (when Sargon, the king of Assyria, sent him), and fought against Ashdod, and took it” (Isa. 20:1).

Until the advent of modern archaeology the name Sargon never appeared in ancient literature apart from references in Isaiah. Critics were, as usual, quick to point out another “historical blunder” in the Bible. But in 1843 their sneers suddenly disappeared, for archaeologist Paul Emil Botta excavated a huge palace at Khorsabad, on the northern edge of Nineveh. The building turned out to be the empire headquarters of Sargon himself. Other finds since this have confirmed that Sargon was one of the greatest (if not greatest) of all Assyrian kings. In one of his records we are told:

“Azuri, King of Ashdod, had schemed not to deliver tribute any more... In a sudden rage I marched quickly in my state chariot and with my cavalry... against Ashdod... and I besieged and conquered... Ashdod... and they bore my yoke”.

20. Sennacherib's failure to capture Jerusalem (2 Kings 18-19, 2 Chron. 32; Isa. 36-37).

“Therefore thus saith the Lord concerning the king of Assyria, He shall not come into this city, nor shoot an arrow there, nor come before it with shields, nor cast a bank against it. By the way that he came, by the same shall he return, and shall not come into this city, saith the Lord. For I will defend this city to save it for mine own sake, and for my servant David's sake” (Isa. 37:33-35)

“then the angel of the Lord went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians and hundred and fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses” (37:36).

Thus reads the biblical account of Sennacherib's Judean invasion. The following is taken from Sennacherib's own record of this time.

“As to Hezekiah the Jew, he did not submit to my yoke. I laid siege to forty-six of his strong cities, walled forts and to countless small villages in the vicinity and conquered them by means of well- stamped earth ramps and battering rams brought thus near to the walls... Himself I made a prisoner in Jerusalem, his royal residence, like a bird in a cage.”

21. The murder of Sennacherib by his own sons

“So Sennacherib king of Assyria departed, and went and returned, and dwelt at Nineveh. And it came to pass as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons smote him with the sword; and they escaped... and Esar-haddon his son reigned in his stead” (Isa. 37:37,38).

Esar-haddon, his son and successor relates this very event in an inscription: “A firm determination fell upon my brothers. They forsook the gods and turned to their deeds of violence, plotting evil. To gain the kingship they slew Sennacherib their father.”

22. Hezekiah's Water Tunnel II Chron. 32:30

“Hezekiah... made a pool, and a conduit, and brought water into the city...” (2 Ki. 20:20).

“This same Hezekiah also stopped the upper watercourse of Gihon, and brought it straight down to the west side of the city of David...” (2 Chron. 32:30).

The most important source of water in ancient Jerusalem was the spring of Gihon situated just east of the temple area in the Kidron Valley. Accordingly, it was exposed to an attacking enemy. To counteract this, Hezekiah had constructed a great conduit leading from the Gihon spring outside the city to a special reservoir inside the city called the Pool of Siloam. This conduit, 1777 feet long and hewn out of solid rock, is one of the most amazing devices for water supply in all the biblical period. Workmen, employing hand picks, operating in zigzag fashion from opposite sides and finally meeting in the middle, excavated a conduit that averages six feet in height. The Pool of Siloam reservoir measures about thirty by twenty feet.

Archaeologically the most interesting thing about Hezekiah's tunnel is the six-line inscription in classical Hebrew beautifully cut at the wall of the conduit about nineteen feet from the Siloam and of the aqueduct. In 1180 two small Arab boys were playing in that area when one of them discovered it. The inscription reads:

“The boring through is completed. Now this is the story of the boring through. While the workmen were still lifting pick to pick, each toward his neighbour, and while three cubits remained to be cut through, each heard the voice of the other...”

The inscription was subsequently chiseled out of the rock and taken by the Turkish government to the archaeological museum of Istanbul.

24. The Capture of Babylon and the Execution of Belshazzar (Dan. 5)

“In the same hour came forth fingers of a man’s hand, and wrote over against the (lampstand) upon the plaster of the wall of the king’s palace...” (5:5).

“... thy kingdom is divided, and given to the Medes and Persians” (5:28).

“In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain. And Darius the Median took the kingdom...” (5:30,31).

Koldeway, who excavated Babylon, says that the largest room he found in the palace was 55 ft by 169 ft long, and had plastered walls.

Concerning the actual capture of the city, the Greek historian Herodotus tells us that the Babylonian armies at first moved north to challenge the advancing Persian troops, but were soon driven back behind the walls of Babylon. Cyrus then proceeded to divert the Euphrates River from its normal bed, under the walls of the city, channeling the waters to a near-by reservoir he had dug. Another Greek historian, Xenophon, states that entrance was made into the city at a time when the Babylonians were feasting at a drunken orgy.

25. Daniel and the Lions’ Den (Dan. 6)

Dan. 6:16 “Then the king commanded, and brought Daniel, and cast him into a den of lions”. This was a common method of execution in Babylon and Assyria.

The excavator Diculafoy was working one day among the ruins of Babylon when he fell into what looked like a well. He was rescued by his fellow workmen, and then it became their purpose to determine what the place was. On the curb was an inscription which said: “The Place of execution, where men who angered the king died torn by wild animals.”

When the palace at Shushan was being excavated, a record was discovered that gave a list of 484 men of high rank who had died in a lion’s den. An inscription of the Assyrian king Ashurbanipal indicates that the same custom was common in his day. He records: “The rest of the people who had rebelled they threw alive among bulls and lions, as Sennacherib my grandfather used to do. Lo, again following his footsteps those men I threw into the midst of them.”

26. Destruction of TYRE prophesied Ezek. 26:1-14

Ezek. 26 contains six prophecies for Tyre that are fulfilled by archaeology and history.

1. Nebuchadnezzar will destroy the mainland city of Tyre. 26:8

Nebuchadnezzar laid siege to Tyre three years after the prophecy. After a thirteen year siege (585-573 BC), Nebuchadnezzar broke the gates down, and he found the city empty because most people had moved by ship to an island half a mile off the coast and fortified a city there. The mainland city was destroyed in 573 BC as foretold, but island Tyre remained.

2. “I will cause MANY NATIONS TO COME AGAINST THEE” as waves(26:3)

A succession of invaders came over many years, e.g. Nebuchadnezzar, Alexander, Moslems, Crusaders, Moslems (1321 AD).

3. “I will SCRAPE HER DUST from her... LIKE THE TOP OF A ROCK” 26:4. When island Tyre refused to submit to Alexander, he demolished the old city on the mainland, and with the debris scraped off like a rock, built a causeway sixty metres wide and half a mile long out to island Tyre, laid siege and destroyed the island (332 BC). The causeway still remains and old Tyre is flat as a rock.

4. Fishermen will SPREAD NETS OVER THE SITE. 26:5

Fishermen today dry their nets on the rocks of old mainland Tyre.

5. Throw the city debris into the water. 26:12.

When Alexanders’ engineers built the causeway they used the remains of old Tyre, laying the stones, timber and dust in the midst of the water.

6. Never to be rebuilt. “Thou shalt be built no more”. 26:14

Old Tyre has been bare as a rock for 2500 years, as God said, even though ten million gallons daily of fresh water supply the site, enough water for a city.

27. Pre-Flood Clay Seals

Ante-Diluvian Origin of Writing

Berosus related a tradition that Xisuthrus, the Babylonian Noah, buried the Sacred Writings before the Flood, on tablets of baked clay, at Sippar, and afterward dug them up. There was a tradition among Arabs and Jews that Enoch invented Writing, and left a number of books. An ancient Babylonian king recorded that “he loved to read the Writings of the age before the Flood”. Assurbanipal, founder of Nineveh’s great Library, referred to “inscriptions of the time before the Flood”.

Ante-Diluvian Books

Some Pre-Flood inscriptions have been found. Figure 2 is a pictographic tablet found, by Dr. Langdon, at Kish, under the Flood deposit. Figure 3, seals found, by Dr. Schmidt, at Fara, under the Flood layer. Dr. Woolley found Pre-Flood seals at Ur.

Seals were the earliest form of writing, representing a person’s name, identifying ownership, serving as a signature on letters, contracts, receipts, and various kinds of writing. Each person had his own seal. Seals were carved by delicate saws or drills on small pieces of stone or metal. In use they were impressed on clay tablets, while the clay was yet soft.

29. Jehoiachin and Eliakim verified from Babylon

II Chronicles Chapter 36:8-10. Jehoiachin (Jeconiah), king of Judah, 597 BC.

Reigned three months. (Told also in II Kings 24:6-17). He was taken to Babylon, where he lived at least 37 years (II Kings 24:15; 25:27).

ARCHAEOLOGICAL NOTES: Jehoiachin, Seals of Jehoiachin’s Steward, At Kiriath-sepher (1928), Hyle and Albright found, in the layer of ashes left by Nebuchadnezzar’s fire, two jar handles stamped, “Belonging to Eliakim Steward of Jehoiachin”. One of these is now in the Pittsburgh-Xenia Seminary. Same impression was found (1930) at Beth-shemesh, by Grant.

Jehoiachin “Lifted Up”, and “Given an Allowance” (II Kings 25:27, 30). Albright has reported a discovery by Weidner, in the ruins of the Hanging Gardens of Babylon, of tablets listing the names of those to whom regular allotments of oil and grain were made, among them, Jehoiachin king of the land of Judah”.

30. Roman Mosaic of Dinosaurs, 2nd Century AD

Sydney Morning Herald, 21.11.83:

“A report from the Soviet news agency, Tass, says that about 1500 tracks made by dinosaurs have been found in Turkmenia- but among those prints are those resembling the footprints of a man. According to Professor Amanniyazov, director of Turkmenia’s Institute of Geology: “If further analysis proves that the prints have been left by anthropoids, the history of mankind will be extended to 150 million, not five million years”.

There is mounting evidence that man and dinosaurs did indeed live on earth at the same time.

a. In Rhodesia, paintings on cave walls by bushmen known to have left the caves on 1500 BC include paintings of brontosaurus. According to the nature of their art, cavemen only painted from what they could actually see. Thus, they would have had to see a brontosaurus in order to paint one.

b. Evidence of these large reptiles has been found since the flood. Dinosaur footprints have been located in the same strata with human footprints in Glen Rose, Texas.